

# MAT3040: Advanced Linear Algebra

## Table Of Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>Week1 .....</b>	<b>1</b>
1.1	Monday for MAT3040	1
1.4	Wednesday for MAT3040	14
<b>2</b>	<b>Week2 .....</b>	<b>33</b>
2.1	Monday for MAT3040	33
2.4	Wednesday for MAT3040	51
<b>3</b>	<b>Week3 .....</b>	<b>73</b>
3.1	Monday for MAT3040	73
3.4	Wednesday for MAT3040	92
<b>4</b>	<b>Week4 .....</b>	<b>109</b>
4.1	Monday for MAT3040	109
4.4	Wednesday for MAT3040	126
<b>5</b>	<b>Week5 .....</b>	<b>145</b>
5.1	Monday for MAT3040	145
5.4	Wednesday for MAT3040	160
<b>6</b>	<b>Week6 .....</b>	<b>175</b>
6.1	Monday for MAT3040	175
6.4	Wednesday for MAT3040	185
<b>7</b>	<b>Week7 .....</b>	<b>193</b>
7.1	Monday for MAT3040	193

7.4	Wednesday for MAT3040	210
<b>8</b>	<b>Week8 .....</b>	<b>223</b>
8.1	Monday for MAT3040	223
<b>9</b>	<b>Week9 .....</b>	<b>257</b>
9.1	Monday for MAT3040	257
9.4	Wednesday for MAT3040	274
<b>10</b>	<b>Week10 .....</b>	<b>291</b>
10.1	Monday for MAT3040	291
10.4	Wednesday for MAT3040	303
<b>11</b>	<b>Week11 .....</b>	<b>321</b>
11.1	Monday for MAT3040	321
11.4	Wednesday for MAT3040	338
<b>12</b>	<b>Week12 .....</b>	<b>355</b>
12.1	Monday for MAT3040	355
12.4	Wednesday for MAT3040	373
<b>13</b>	<b>Week13 .....</b>	<b>385</b>
13.1	Monday for MAT3040	385
13.4	Wednesday for MAT3040	403
<b>14</b>	<b>Week14 .....</b>	<b>417</b>
14.1	Monday for MAT3040	417

# Chapter 1

## Week1

### 1.1. Monday for MAT3040

#### 1.1.1. Introduction to Advanced Linear Algebra

Advanced Linear Algebra is one of the most important course in MATH major, with pre-request MAT2040. This course will offer the really linear algebra knowledge.

**What the content will be covered?.**

- In MAT2040 we have studied the space  $\mathbb{R}^n$ ; while in MAT3040 we will study the general vector space  $V$ .
- In MAT2040 we have studied the *linear transformation* between Euclidean spaces, i.e.,  $T : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^m$ ; while in MAT3040 we will study the linear transformation from vector spaces to vector spaces:  $T : V \rightarrow W$
- In MAT2040 we have studied the eigenvalues of  $n \times n$  matrix  $\mathbf{A}$ ; while in MAT3040 we will study the eigenvalues of a **linear operator**  $T : V \rightarrow V$ .
- In MAT2040 we have studied the dot product  $\mathbf{x} \cdot \mathbf{y} = \sum_{i=1}^n x_i y_i$ ; while in MAT3040 we will study the **inner product**  $\langle \mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2 \rangle$ .

**Why do we do the generalization?.** We are studying many other spaces, e.g.,  $C(\mathbb{R})$  is called the space of all functions on  $\mathbb{R}$ ,  $C^\infty(\mathbb{R})$  is called the space of all infinitely differentiable functions on  $\mathbb{R}$ ,  $\mathbb{R}[x]$  is the space of polynomials of one-variable.

- **Example 1.1** 1. Consider the Laplace equation  $\Delta f = 0$  with linear operator  $\Delta$ :

$$\Delta : C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^3) \rightarrow C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^3) \quad f \mapsto \left( \frac{\partial^2}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2}{\partial y^2} + \frac{\partial^2}{\partial z^2} \right) f$$

The solution to the PDE  $\Delta f = 0$  is the 0-eigenspace of  $\Delta$ .

2. Consider the Schrödinger equation  $\hat{H}f = Ef$  with the linear operator

$$\hat{H} : C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^3) \rightarrow C^\infty(\mathbb{R}^3), \quad f \mapsto \left[ \frac{-\hbar^2}{2\mu} \nabla^2 + V(x, y, z) \right] f$$

Solving the equation  $\hat{H}f = Ef$  is equivalent to finding the eigenvectors of  $\hat{H}$ . In fact, the eigenvalues of  $\hat{H}$  are **discrete**.

## 1.1.2. Vector Spaces

**Definition 1.1** [Vector Space] A **vector space** over a field  $\mathbb{F}$  (in particular,  $\mathbb{F} = \mathbb{R}$  or  $\mathbb{C}$ ) is a set of objects  $V$  equipped with vector addition and scalar multiplication such that

1. the vector addition  $+$  is closed with the rules:

- (a) **Commutativity**:  $\forall \mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2 \in V, \mathbf{v}_1 + \mathbf{v}_2 = \mathbf{v}_2 + \mathbf{v}_1$ .
- (b) **Associativity**:  $\mathbf{v}_1 + (\mathbf{v}_2 + \mathbf{v}_3) = (\mathbf{v}_1 + \mathbf{v}_2) + \mathbf{v}_3$ .
- (c) **Additive Identity**:  $\exists \mathbf{0} \in V$  such that  $\mathbf{0} + \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{v}, \forall \mathbf{v} \in V$ .

2. the **scalar multiplication** is closed with the rules:

- (a) **Distributive**:  $\alpha(\mathbf{v}_1 + \mathbf{v}_2) = \alpha\mathbf{v}_1 + \alpha\mathbf{v}_2, \forall \alpha \in \mathbb{F} \text{ and } \mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2 \in V$
- (b) **Distributive**:  $(\alpha_1 + \alpha_2)\mathbf{v} = \alpha_1\mathbf{v} + \alpha_2\mathbf{v}$
- (c) **Compatibility**:  $a(b\mathbf{v}) = (ab)\mathbf{v}$  for  $\forall a, b \in \mathbb{F}$  and  $\mathbf{v} \in V$ .
- (d)  $0\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{0}, 1\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{v}$ .

Here we study several examples of vector spaces:

■ **Example 1.2** For  $V = \mathbb{F}^n$ , we can define

1. Addictive Identity:

$$\mathbf{0} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ \vdots \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

2. Scalar Multiplication:

$$\alpha \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ \vdots \\ x_n \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha x_1 \\ \vdots \\ \alpha x_n \end{pmatrix}$$

3. Vector Addiction:

$$\begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ \vdots \\ x_n \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} y_1 \\ \vdots \\ y_n \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} x_1 + y_1 \\ \vdots \\ x_n + y_n \end{pmatrix}$$

■ **Example 1.3** 1. It is clear that the set  $V = M_{n \times n}(\mathbb{F})$  (the set of all  $m \times n$  matrices) is a vector space as well.

2. The set  $V = C(\mathbb{R})$  is a vector space:

(a) Vector Addiction:

$$(f + g)(x) = f(x) + g(x), \forall f, g \in V$$

(b) Scalar Multiplication:

$$(\alpha f)(x) = \alpha f(x), \forall \alpha \in \mathbb{R}, f \in V$$

(c) Addictive Identity is a zero function, i.e.,  $\mathbf{0}(x) = 0$  for all  $x \in \mathbb{R}$ .

**Definition 1.2** A sub-collection  $W \subseteq V$  of a vector space  $V$  is called a **vector subspace** of  $V$  if  $W$  itself forms a vector space, denoted by  $W \leq V$ . ■

- **Example 1.4**
1. For  $V = \mathbb{R}^3$ , we claim that  $W = \{(x, y, 0) \mid x, y \in \mathbb{R}\} \leq V$
  2.  $W = \{(x, y, 1) \mid x, y \in \mathbb{R}\}$  is not the vector subspace of  $V$ . ■

**Proposition 1.1**  $W \subseteq V$  is a **vector subspace** of  $V$  iff for  $\forall \mathbf{w}_1, \mathbf{w}_2 \in W$ , we have  $\alpha \mathbf{w}_1 + \beta \mathbf{w}_2 \in W$ , for  $\forall \alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{F}$ .

- **Example 1.5**
1. For  $V = M_{n \times n}(\mathbb{F})$ , the subspace  $W = \{A \in V \mid \mathbf{A}^T = \mathbf{A}\} \leq V$
  2. For  $V = C^\infty(\mathbb{R})$ , define  $W = \{f \in V \mid \frac{d^2}{dx^2} f + f = 0\} \leq V$ . For  $f, g \in W$ , we have

$$(\alpha f + \beta g)'' = \alpha f'' + \beta g'' = \alpha(-f) + \beta(-g) = -(\alpha f + \beta g),$$

which implies  $(\alpha f + \beta g)'' + (\alpha f + \beta g) = 0$ . ■

## 1.4. Wednesday for MAT3040

### 1.4.1. Review

1. Vector Space: e.g.,  $\mathbb{R}, M_{n \times n}(\mathbb{R}), C(\mathbb{R}^n), \mathbb{R}[x]$ .
2. Vector Subspace:  $W \leq V$ , e.g.,
  - (a)  $V = \mathbb{R}^2$ , the set  $W := \mathbb{R}_+^2$  is not a vector subspace since  $W$  is not closed under scalar multiplication;
  - (b) the set  $W = \mathbb{R}_+^2 \cup \mathbb{R}_-^2$  is not a vector subspace since it is not closed under addition.
  - (c) For  $V = M_{3 \times 3}(\mathbb{R})$ , the set of invertible  $3 \times 3$  matrices is not a vector subspace, since we cannot define zero vector inside.
  - (d) Exercise: How about the set of all singular matrices? Answer: it is not a vector subspace since the vector addition does not necessarily hold.

### 1.4.2. Spanning Set

**Definition 1.11** [Span] Let  $V$  be a vector space over  $\mathbb{F}$ :

1. A linear combination of a subset  $S$  in  $V$  is of the form

$$\sum_{i=1}^n \alpha_i \mathbf{s}_i, \quad \alpha_i \in \mathbb{F}, \mathbf{s}_i \in S$$

Note that the summation should be finite.

2. The **span** of a subset  $S \subseteq V$  is

$$\text{span}(S) = \left\{ \sum_{i=1}^n \alpha_i \mathbf{s}_i \mid \alpha_i \in \mathbb{F}, \mathbf{s}_i \in S \right\}$$

3.  $S$  is a spanning set of  $V$ , or say  $S$  spans  $V$ , if

$$\text{span}(S) = V.$$

■ **Example 1.12** For  $V = \mathbb{R}[x]$ , define the set

$$S = \{1, x^2, x^4, \dots, x^6\},$$

then  $2 + x^4 + \pi x^{106} \in \text{span}(S)$ , while the series  $1 + x^2 + x^4 + \dots \notin \text{span}(S)$ .

It is clear that  $\text{span}(S) \neq V$ , but  $S$  is the spanning set of  $W = \{p \in V \mid p(x) = p(-x)\}$ . ■

■ **Example 1.13** For  $V = M_{3 \times 3}(\mathbb{R})$ , let  $W_1 = \{\mathbf{A} \in V \mid \mathbf{A}^T = \mathbf{A}\}$  and  $W_2 = \{\mathbf{B} \in V \mid \mathbf{B}^T = -\mathbf{B}\}$  (the set of skew-symmetric matrices) be two vector subspaces. Define the set

$$\mathcal{S} := W_1 \cup W_2$$

Exercise:  $\mathcal{S}$  spans  $V$ . ■

**Proposition 1.7** Let  $S$  be a subset in a vector space  $V$ .

1.  $S \subseteq \text{span}(S)$
2.  $\text{span}(S) = \text{span}(\text{span}(S))$
3. If  $\mathbf{w} \in \text{span}\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_n\} \setminus \text{span}\{\mathbf{v}_2, \dots, \mathbf{v}_n\}$ , then

$$\mathbf{v}_1 \in \text{span}\{\mathbf{w}, \mathbf{v}_2, \dots, \mathbf{v}_n\} \setminus \text{span}\{\mathbf{v}_2, \dots, \mathbf{v}_n\}$$

*Proof.* 1. For each  $\mathbf{s} \in S$ , we have

$$\mathbf{s} = 1 \cdot \mathbf{s} \in \text{span}(S)$$

2. From (1), it's clear that  $\text{span}(S) \subseteq \text{span}(\text{span}(S))$ , and therefore suffices to show  $\text{span}(\text{span}(S)) \subseteq \text{span}(S)$ :

Pick  $\mathbf{v} = \sum_{i=1}^n \alpha_i \mathbf{v}_i \in \text{span}(\text{span}(S))$ , where  $\mathbf{v}_i \in \text{span}(S)$ . Rewrite

$$\mathbf{v}_i = \sum_{j=1}^{n_i} \beta_{ij} \mathbf{s}_j, \quad \mathbf{s}_j \in S,$$



which implies

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{v} &= \sum_{i=1}^n \alpha_i \sum_{j=1}^{n_i} \beta_{ij} \mathbf{s}_j \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^n \sum_{j=1}^{n_i} (\alpha_i \beta_{ij}) \mathbf{s}_j,\end{aligned}$$

i.e.,  $\mathbf{v}$  is the finite combination of elements in  $S$ , which implies  $\mathbf{v} \in \text{span}(S)$ .

3. By hypothesis,  $\mathbf{w} = \alpha_1 \mathbf{v}_1 + \cdots + \alpha_n \mathbf{v}_n$  with  $\alpha_1 \neq 0$ , which implies

$$\mathbf{v}_1 = -\frac{\alpha_2}{\alpha_1} \mathbf{v}_2 + \cdots + \left(-\frac{1}{\alpha_1} \mathbf{w}\right)$$

which implies  $\mathbf{v}_1 \in \text{span}\{\mathbf{w}, \mathbf{v}_2, \dots, \mathbf{v}_n\}$ . It suffices to show  $\mathbf{v}_1 \notin \text{span}\{\mathbf{v}_2, \dots, \mathbf{v}_n\}$ .

Suppose on the contrary that  $\mathbf{v}_1 \in \text{span}\{\mathbf{v}_2, \dots, \mathbf{v}_n\}$ . It's clear that  $\text{span}\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_n\} = \text{span}\{\mathbf{v}_2, \dots, \mathbf{v}_n\}$ . (left as exercise). Therefore,

$$\emptyset = \text{span}\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_n\} \setminus \text{span}\{\mathbf{v}_2, \dots, \mathbf{v}_n\},$$

which is a contradiction. ■

### 1.4.3. Linear Independence and Basis

**Definition 1.12** [Linear Independence] Let  $S$  be a (not necessarily finite) subset of  $V$ . Then  $S$  is **linearly independent** (l.i.) on  $V$  if for any finite subset  $\{\mathbf{s}_1, \dots, \mathbf{s}_k\}$  in  $S$ ,

$$\sum_{i=1}^k \alpha_i \mathbf{s}_i = \mathbf{0} \iff \alpha_i = 0, \forall i$$

■ **Example 1.14** For  $V = C(\mathbb{R})$ ,

1. let  $S_1 = \{\sin x, \cos x\}$ , which is l.i., since

$$\alpha \sin x + \beta \cos x = \mathbf{0} \text{ (means zero function)}$$

Taking  $x = 0$  both sides leads to  $\beta = 0$ ; taking  $x = \frac{\pi}{2}$  both sides leads to  $\alpha = 0$ .

2. let  $S_2 = \{\sin^2 x, \cos^2 x, 1\}$ , which is linearly dependent, since

$$1 \cdot \sin^2 x + 1 \cdot \cos^2 x + (-1) \cdot 1 = 0, \forall x$$

3. Exercise: For  $V = \mathbb{R}[x]$ , let  $S = \{1, x, x^2, x^3, \dots\}$ , which is l.i.:

Pick  $x^{k_1}, \dots, x^{k_n} \in S$  with  $k_1 < \dots < k_n$ . Consider that the equation

$$\alpha_1 x^{k_1} + \dots + \alpha_n x^{k_n} = \mathbf{0}$$

holds for all  $x$ , and try to solve for  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n$  (one way is differentiation.)

**Definition 1.13** [Basis] A subset  $S$  is a **basis** of  $V$  if

- (a)  $S$  spans  $V$ ;
- (b)  $S$  is l.i.

■ **Example 1.15** 1. For  $V = \mathbb{R}^n$ ,  $S = \{\mathbf{e}_1, \dots, \mathbf{e}_n\}$  is a basis of  $V$

2. For  $V = \mathbb{R}[x]$ ,  $S = \{1, x, x^2, \dots\}$  is a basis of  $V$

3. For  $V = M_{2 \times 2}(\mathbb{R})$ ,

$$S = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \right\}$$

is a basis of  $V$

**R** Note that there can be many basis for a vector space  $V$ .

**Proposition 1.8** Let  $V = \text{span}\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_m\}$ , then there exists a subset of  $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_m\}$ , which is a basis of  $V$ .

*Proof.* If  $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_m\}$  is l.i., the proof is complete.

Suppose not, then  $\alpha_1 \mathbf{v}_1 + \dots + \alpha_m \mathbf{v}_m = \mathbf{0}$  has a non-trivial solution. w.l.o.g.,  $\alpha_1 \neq 0$ , which implies

$$\mathbf{v}_1 = -\frac{\alpha_2}{\alpha_1} \mathbf{v}_2 + \dots + \left(\frac{\alpha_m}{\alpha_1}\right) \mathbf{v}_m \implies \mathbf{v}_1 \in \text{span}\{\mathbf{v}_2, \dots, \mathbf{v}_m\}$$

By the proof in (c), Proposition (1.7),

$$\text{span}\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_m\} = \text{span}\{\mathbf{v}_2, \dots, \mathbf{v}_m\},$$

which implies  $V = \text{span}\{\mathbf{v}_2, \dots, \mathbf{v}_m\}$ .

Continue this argument finitely many times to guarantee that  $\{\mathbf{v}_i, \mathbf{v}_{i+1}, \dots, \mathbf{v}_m\}$  is l.i., and spans  $V$ . The proof is complete. ■

**Corollary 1.1** If  $V = \text{span}\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_m\}$  (i.e.,  $V$  is finitely generated), then  $V$  has a basis. (The same holds for non-finitely generated  $V$ ).

**Proposition 1.9** If  $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_n\}$  is a basis of  $V$ , then every  $\mathbf{v} \in V$  can be expressed uniquely as

$$\mathbf{v} = \alpha_1 \mathbf{v}_1 + \dots + \alpha_n \mathbf{v}_n$$

*Proof.* Since  $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_n\}$  spans  $V$ , so  $\mathbf{v} \in V$  can be written as

$$\mathbf{v} = \alpha_1 \mathbf{v}_1 + \dots + \alpha_n \mathbf{v}_n \tag{1.1}$$

Suppose further that

$$\mathbf{v} = \beta_1 \mathbf{v}_1 + \dots + \beta_n \mathbf{v}_n, \tag{1.2}$$

it suffices to show that  $\alpha_i = \beta_i$  for  $\forall i$ :

Subtracting (1.1) into (1.2) leads to

$$(\alpha_1 - \beta_1)\mathbf{v}_1 + \cdots + (\alpha_n - \beta_n)\mathbf{v}_n = 0.$$

By the hypothesis of linear independence, we have  $\alpha_i - \beta_i = 0$  for  $\forall i$ , i.e.,  $\alpha_i = \beta_i$ . ■

# Chapter 2

## Week2

### 2.1. Monday for MAT3040

Reviewing.

1. Linear Combination and Span
2. Linear Independence
3. Basis: a set of vectors  $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_k\}$  is called a **basis** for  $V$  if  $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_k\}$  is linearly independent, and  $V = \text{span}\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_k\}$ .

Lemma: Given  $V = \text{span}\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_k\}$ , we can find a basis for this set. Here  $V$  is said to be **finitely generated**.

4. Lemma: The vector  $\mathbf{w} \in \text{span}\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_n\} \setminus \text{span}\{\mathbf{v}_2, \dots, \mathbf{v}_n\}$  implies that

$$\mathbf{v}_1 \in \text{span}\{\mathbf{w}, \mathbf{v}_2, \dots, \mathbf{v}_n\} \setminus \text{span}\{\mathbf{v}_2, \dots, \mathbf{v}_n\}$$

#### 2.1.1. Basis and Dimension

**Theorem 2.1** Let  $V$  be a finitely generated vector space. Suppose  $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_m\}$  and  $\{\mathbf{w}_1, \dots, \mathbf{w}_n\}$  are two basis of  $V$ . Then  $m = n$ . (where  $m$  is called the **dimension**)

*Proof.* Suppose on the contrary that  $m \neq n$ . Without loss of generality (w.l.o.g.), assume that  $m < n$ . Let  $\mathbf{v}_1 = \alpha_1 \mathbf{w}_1 + \dots + \alpha_n \mathbf{w}_n$ , with some  $\alpha_i \neq 0$ . w.l.o.g., assume  $\alpha_1 \neq 0$ . Therefore,

$$\mathbf{v}_1 \in \text{span}\{\mathbf{w}_1, \mathbf{w}_2, \dots, \mathbf{w}_n\} \setminus \text{span}\{\mathbf{w}_2, \dots, \mathbf{w}_n\} \quad (2.1)$$

which implies that  $\mathbf{w}_1 \in \text{span}\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{w}_2, \dots, \mathbf{w}_n\} \setminus \text{span}\{\mathbf{w}_2, \dots, \mathbf{w}_n\}$ .

Then we claim that  $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{w}_2, \dots, \mathbf{w}_n\}$  is a basis of  $V$ :

1. Note that  $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{w}_2, \dots, \mathbf{w}_n\}$  is a spanning set:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{w}_1 \in \text{span}\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{w}_2, \dots, \mathbf{w}_n\} &\implies \{\mathbf{w}_1, \mathbf{w}_2, \dots, \mathbf{w}_n\} \subseteq \text{span}\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{w}_2, \dots, \mathbf{w}_n\} \\ &\implies \text{span}\{\mathbf{w}_1, \mathbf{w}_2, \dots, \mathbf{w}_n\} \subseteq \text{span}\{\text{span}\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{w}_2, \dots, \mathbf{w}_n\}\} \subseteq \text{span}\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{w}_2, \dots, \mathbf{w}_n\} \end{aligned}$$

Since  $V = \text{span}\{\mathbf{w}_1, \mathbf{w}_2, \dots, \mathbf{w}_n\}$ , we have  $\text{span}\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{w}_2, \dots, \mathbf{w}_n\} = V$ .

2. Then we show the linear independence of  $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{w}_2, \dots, \mathbf{w}_n\}$ . Consider the equation

$$\beta_1 \mathbf{v}_1 + \beta_2 \mathbf{v}_2 + \dots + \beta_n \mathbf{w}_n = \mathbf{0}$$

- (a) When  $\beta_1 \neq 0$ , we imply

$$\mathbf{v}_1 = \left(-\frac{\beta_2}{\beta_1}\right) \mathbf{w}_2 + \dots + \left(-\frac{\beta_n}{\beta_1}\right) \mathbf{w}_n \in \text{span}\{\mathbf{w}_2, \dots, \mathbf{w}_n\},$$

which contradicts (2.1).

- (b) When  $\beta_1 = 0$ , then  $\beta_2 \mathbf{w}_2 + \dots + \beta_n \mathbf{w}_n = \mathbf{0}$ , which implies  $\beta_2 = \dots = \beta_n = 0$ , due to the independence of  $\{\mathbf{w}_2, \dots, \mathbf{w}_n\}$ .

Therefore,  $\mathbf{v}_2 \in \text{span}\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{w}_2, \dots, \mathbf{w}_n\}$ , i.e.,

$$\mathbf{v}_2 = \gamma_1 \mathbf{v}_1 + \dots + \gamma_n \mathbf{w}_n,$$

where  $\gamma_2, \dots, \gamma_n$  cannot be all zeros, since otherwise  $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2\}$  are linearly dependent, i.e.,  $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_m\}$  cannot form a basis. w.l.o.g., assume  $\gamma_2 \neq 0$ , which implies

$$\mathbf{w}_2 \in \text{span}\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{w}_3, \dots, \mathbf{w}_n\} \setminus \text{span}\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{w}_3, \dots, \mathbf{w}_n\}.$$

Following the similar argument above,  $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{w}_3, \dots, \mathbf{w}_n\}$  forms a basis of  $V$ .

Continuing the argument above, we imply  $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_m, \mathbf{w}_{m+1}, \dots, \mathbf{w}_n\}$  is a basis of  $V$ .

Since  $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_m\}$  is a basis as well, we imply

$$\mathbf{w}_{m+1} = \delta_1 \mathbf{v}_1 + \dots + \delta_m \mathbf{v}_m$$

for some  $\delta_i \in \mathbb{F}$ , i.e.,  $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_m, \mathbf{w}_{m+1}\}$  is linearly dependent, which is a contradiction. ■

■ **Example 2.1** A vector space may have more than one basis.

Suppose  $V = \mathbb{F}^n$ , it is clear that  $\dim(V) = n$ , and

$\{\mathbf{e}_1, \dots, \mathbf{e}_n\}$  is a basis of  $V$ , where  $\mathbf{e}_i$  denotes a unit vector.

There could be other basis of  $V$ , such as

$$\left\{ \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ \vdots \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ \vdots \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \dots, \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ \vdots \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \right\}$$

Actually, the columns of any invertible  $n \times n$  matrix forms a basis of  $V$ . ■

■ **Example 2.2** Suppose  $V = M_{m \times n}(\mathbb{R})$ , we claim that  $\dim(V) = mn$ :

$$\left\{ E_{ij} \mid \begin{matrix} 1 \leq i \leq m \\ 1 \leq j \leq n \end{matrix} \right\} \text{ is a basis of } V,$$

where  $E_{ij}$  is  $m \times n$  matrix with 1 at  $(i, j)$ -th entry, and 0s at the remaining entries. ■

■ **Example 2.3** Suppose  $V = \{\text{all polynomials of degree} \leq n\}$ , then  $\dim(V) = n + 1$ . ■

■ **Example 2.4** Suppose  $V = \{\mathbf{A} \in M_{n \times n}(\mathbb{R}) \mid \mathbf{A}^T = \mathbf{A}\}$ , then  $\dim(V) = \frac{n(n+1)}{2}$ . ■

■ **Example 2.5** Let  $W = \{\mathbf{B} \in M_{n \times n}(\mathbb{R}) \mid \mathbf{B}^T = -\mathbf{B}\}$ , then  $\dim(V) = \frac{n(n-1)}{2}$ . ■

**R** Sometimes it should be classified the field  $\mathbb{F}$  for the scalar multiplication to define a vector space. Consider the example below:

1. Let  $V = \mathbb{C}$ , then  $\dim(\mathbb{C}) = 1$  for the scalar multiplication defined under the field  $\mathbb{C}$ .
2. Let  $V = \text{span}\{1, i\} = \mathbb{C}$ , then  $\dim(\mathbb{C}) = 2$  for the scalar multiplication defined under the field  $\mathbb{R}$ , since all  $z \in V$  can be written as  $z = a + bi$ ,  $\forall a, b \in \mathbb{R}$ .
3. Therefore, to avoid confusion, it is safe to write

$$\dim_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}) = 1, \quad \dim_{\mathbb{R}}(\mathbb{C}) = 2.$$

## 2.1.2. Operations on a vector space

Note that the basis for a vector space is characterized as the **maximal linearly independent set**.

**Theorem 2.2 — Basis Extension.** Let  $V$  be a finite dimensional vector space, and  $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_k\}$  be a linearly independent set on  $V$ , Then we can extend it to the basis  $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_k, \mathbf{v}_{k+1}, \dots, \mathbf{v}_n\}$  of  $V$ .

*Proof.* • Suppose  $\dim(V) = n > k$ , and  $\{\mathbf{w}_1, \dots, \mathbf{w}_n\}$  is a basis of  $V$ . Consider the set  $\{\mathbf{w}_1, \dots, \mathbf{w}_n\} \cup \{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_k\}$ , which is linearly dependent, i.e.,

$$\alpha_1 \mathbf{w}_1 + \dots + \alpha_n \mathbf{w}_n + \beta_1 \mathbf{v}_1 + \dots + \beta_k \mathbf{v}_k = \mathbf{0},$$

with some  $\alpha_i \neq 0$ , since otherwise this equation will only have trivial solution. w.l.o.g., assume  $\alpha_1 \neq 0$ .

- Therefore, consider the set  $\{\mathbf{w}_2, \dots, \mathbf{w}_n\} \cup \{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_k\}$ . We keep removing elements from  $\{\mathbf{w}_2, \dots, \mathbf{w}_n\}$  until we first get the set

$$S \cup \{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_k\},$$



with  $S \subseteq \{\mathbf{w}_1, \mathbf{w}_2, \dots, \mathbf{w}_n\}$  and  $S \cup \{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_k\}$  is linearly independent, i.e.,  $S$  is a maximal subset of  $\{\mathbf{w}_1, \dots, \mathbf{w}_n\}$  such that  $S \cup \{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_k\}$  is linearly independent.

- Rewrite  $S = \{\mathbf{v}_{k+1}, \dots, \mathbf{v}_m\}$  and therefore  $S' = \{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_k, \mathbf{v}_{k+1}, \dots, \mathbf{v}_m\}$  are linearly independent. It suffices to show  $S'$  spans  $V$ .
  - Indeed, for all  $\mathbf{w}_i \in \{\mathbf{w}_1, \dots, \mathbf{w}_n\}$ ,  $\mathbf{w}_i \in \text{span}(S')$ , since otherwise the equation

$$\alpha \mathbf{w}_i + \beta_1 \mathbf{v}_1 + \dots + \beta_m \mathbf{v}_m = \mathbf{0} \implies \alpha = 0,$$

which implies that  $\beta_1 \mathbf{v}_1 + \dots + \beta_m \mathbf{v}_m = \mathbf{0}$  admits only trivial solution, i.e.,

$$\{\mathbf{w}_i\} \cup S' = \{\mathbf{w}_i\} \cup S \cup \{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_k\} \text{ is linearly independent,}$$

which violates the maximality of  $S$ .

Therefore, all  $\{\mathbf{w}_1, \dots, \mathbf{w}_n\} \subseteq \text{span}(S')$ , which implies  $\text{span}(S') = V$ .

Therefore,  $S'$  is a basis of  $V$ . ■

- R** Start with a spanning set, we keep removing something to form a basis; start with independent set, we keep adding something to form a basis.

In other words, the basis is both the minimal spanning set, and the maximal linearly independent set.

**Definition 2.1** [Direct Sum] Let  $W_1, W_2$  be two vector subspaces of  $V$ , then

1.  $W_1 \cap W_2 := \{\mathbf{w} \in V \mid \mathbf{w} \in W_1, \text{ and } \mathbf{w} \in W_2\}$
2.  $W_1 + W_2 := \{\mathbf{w}_1 + \mathbf{w}_2 \mid \mathbf{w}_i \in W_i\}$
3. If furthermore that  $W_1 \cap W_2 = \{\mathbf{0}\}$ , then  $W_1 + W_2$  is denoted as  $W_1 \oplus W_2$ , which is called **direct sum**. ■

**Proposition 2.1**  $W_1 \cap W_2$  and  $W_1 + W_2$  are vector subspaces of  $V$ .

## 2.4. Wednesday for MAT3040

Reviewing.

- Basis, Dimension
- Basis Extension
- $W_1 \cap W_2 = \emptyset$  implies  $W_1 \oplus W_2 = W_1 + W_2$  (Direct Sum).

### 2.4.1. Remark on Direct Sum

**Proposition 2.13** The set  $W_1 + W_2 = W_1 \oplus W_2$  iff any  $\mathbf{w} \in W_1 + W_2$  can be uniquely expressed as

$$\mathbf{w} = \mathbf{w}_1 + \mathbf{w}_2,$$

where  $\mathbf{w}_i \in W_i$  for  $i = 1, 2$ .

**R** We can also define addition among finite set of vector spaces  $\{W_1, \dots, W_k\}$ .

If  $\mathbf{w}_1 + \dots + \mathbf{w}_k = \mathbf{0}$  implies  $\mathbf{w}_i = \mathbf{0}, \forall i$ , then we can write  $W_1 + \dots + W_k$  as

$$W_1 \oplus \dots \oplus W_k$$

**Proposition 2.14 — Complementation.** Let  $W \leq V$  be a vector subspace of a finite dimension vector space  $V$ . Then there exists  $W' \leq V$  such that

$$W \oplus W' = V.$$

*Proof.* It's clear that  $\dim(W) := k \leq n := \dim(V)$ . Suppose  $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_k\}$  is a basis of  $W$ .

By the basis extension proposition, we can extend it into  $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_k, \mathbf{v}_{k+1}, \dots, \mathbf{v}_n\}$ , which is a basis of  $V$ .

Therefore, we take  $W' = \text{span}\{\mathbf{v}_{k+1}, \dots, \mathbf{v}_n\}$ , which follows that

1.  $W + W' = V$ :  $\forall \mathbf{v} \in V$  has the form

$$\mathbf{v} = (\alpha_1 \mathbf{v}_1 + \cdots + \alpha_k \mathbf{v}_k) + (\alpha_{k+1} \mathbf{v}_{k+1} + \cdots + \alpha_n \mathbf{v}_n),$$

where  $\alpha_1 \mathbf{v}_1 + \cdots + \alpha_k \mathbf{v}_k \in W$  and  $\alpha_{k+1} \mathbf{v}_{k+1} + \cdots + \alpha_n \mathbf{v}_n \in W'$ .

2.  $W \cap W' = \{\mathbf{0}\}$ : Suppose  $\mathbf{v} \in W \cap W'$ , i.e.,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{v} &= (\beta_1 \mathbf{v}_1 + \cdots + \beta_k \mathbf{v}_k) + (0 \mathbf{v}_{k+1} + \cdots + 0 \mathbf{v}_n) \in W \\ &= (0 \mathbf{v}_1 + \cdots + 0 \mathbf{v}_k) + (\beta_{k+1} \mathbf{v}_{k+1} + \cdots + \beta_n \mathbf{v}_n) \in W'. \end{aligned}$$

By the uniqueness of coordinates, we imply  $\beta_1 = \cdots = \beta_n = 0$ , i.e.,  $\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{0}$ .

Therefore, we conclude that  $W \oplus W' = V$ . ■

## 2.4.2. Linear Transformation

**Definition 2.7** [Linear Transformation] Let  $V, W$  be vector spaces. Then  $T : V \rightarrow W$  is a linear transformation if

$$T(\alpha \mathbf{v}_1 + \beta \mathbf{v}_2) = \alpha T(\mathbf{v}_1) + \beta T(\mathbf{v}_2),$$

for  $\forall \alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{F}$  and  $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2 \in V$ . ■

- Proposition 2.15**
1. Suppose that  $S : V \rightarrow W$  and  $T : W \rightarrow U$  are linear transformations, then so is  $T \circ S : V \rightarrow U$ .
  2. For any linear transformation  $T : V \rightarrow W$ , we have

$$T(\mathbf{0}_V) = \mathbf{0}_W$$

*Proof.* Simply apply the definition of the linear transformation. ■

- **Example 2.12**
1. The transformation  $T : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^m$  defined as  $\mathbf{x} \mapsto \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}$  (where  $\mathbf{A} \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times n}$ ) is a linear transformation.

2. The transformation  $T : \mathbb{R}[x] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}[x]$  defined as

$$p(x) \mapsto T(p(x)) = p'(x), \quad p(x) \mapsto T(p(x)) = \int_0^x p(t) dt$$

is a linear transformation

3. The transformation  $T : M_{n \times n}(\mathbb{R}) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  defined as

$$\mathbf{A} \mapsto \text{trace}(\mathbf{A}) := \sum_{i=1}^n a_{ii}$$

is a linear transformation.

However, the transformation

$$\mathbf{A} \mapsto \det(\mathbf{A})$$

is not a linear transformation.

**Definition 2.8** [Kernel/Image] Let  $T : V \rightarrow W$  be a linear transformation.

1. The **kernel** of  $T$  is

$$\ker(T) = T^{-1}(\mathbf{0}) = \{\mathbf{v} \in V \mid T(\mathbf{v}) = \mathbf{0}\}$$

2. The **image** (or range) of  $T$  is

$$\text{Im}(T) = T(V) = \{T(\mathbf{v}) \in W \mid \mathbf{v} \in V\}$$

■ **Example 2.13** 1. Let  $T : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$  be a linear transformation with  $T(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}$ , then

$$\ker(T) = \{\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n \mid \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}\} = \text{Null}(\mathbf{A}) \quad \text{Null Space}$$

and

$$\text{Im}(T) = \{\mathbf{A}\mathbf{x} \mid \mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n\} = \text{Col}(\mathbf{A}) = \text{span}\{\text{columns of } \mathbf{A}\} \quad \text{Column Space}$$

2. For  $T(p(x)) = p'(x)$ ,  $\ker(T) = \{\text{constant polynomials}\}$  and  $\text{Im}(T) = \mathbb{R}[x]$ .

**Proposition 2.16** The kernel or image for a linear transformation  $T : V \rightarrow W$  also forms a vector subspace:

$$\ker(T) \leq V, \quad \text{Im}(T) \leq W$$

*Proof.* For  $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2 \in \ker(T)$ , we imply

$$T(\alpha \mathbf{v}_1 + \beta \mathbf{v}_2) = \mathbf{0},$$

which implies  $\alpha \mathbf{v}_1 + \beta \mathbf{v}_2 \in \ker(T)$ .

The remaining proof follows similarly. ■

**Definition 2.9** [Rank/Nullity] Let  $V, W$  be finite dimensional vector spaces and  $T : V \rightarrow W$  a linear transformation. Then we define

$$\text{rank}(T) = \dim(\text{Im}(T))$$

$$\text{nullity}(T) = \dim(\ker(T))$$

Ⓡ Let

$$\text{Hom}_{\mathbb{F}}(V, W) = \{\text{all linear transformations } T : V \rightarrow W\},$$

and we can define the addition and scalar multiplication to make it a vector space:

1. For  $T, S \in \text{Hom}_{\mathbb{F}}(V, W)$ , define

$$(T + S)(\mathbf{v}) = T(\mathbf{v}) + S(\mathbf{v}),$$

which implies  $T + S \in \text{Hom}_{\mathbb{F}}(V, W)$ .

2. Also, define

$$(\gamma T)(\mathbf{v}) = \gamma T(\mathbf{v}), \quad \text{for } \forall \gamma \in \mathbb{F},$$

which implies  $\gamma T \in \text{Hom}_{\mathbb{F}}(V, W)$ .

In particular, if  $V = \mathbb{R}^n, W = \mathbb{R}^m$ , then

$$\text{Hom}_{\mathbb{F}}(V, W) = M_{m \times n}(\mathbb{R}).$$

**Proposition 2.17** If  $\dim(V) = n, \dim(W) = m$ , then  $\dim(\text{Hom}_{\mathbb{F}}(V, W)) = mn$ .

**Proposition 2.18** There are alternative characterizations for the injectivity and surjectivity of linear transformation  $T$ :

1. The linear transformation  $T$  is injective if and only if

$$\ker(T) = \mathbf{0}, \iff \text{nullity}(T) = 0.$$

2. The linear transformation  $T$  is surjective if and only if

$$\text{im}(T) = W, \iff \text{rank}(T) = \dim(W).$$

3. If  $T$  is bijective, then  $T^{-1}$  is a linear transformation.

*Proof.* 1. (a) For the forward direction of (1),

$$\mathbf{x} \in \ker(T) \implies T(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{0} = T(\mathbf{0}) \implies \mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$$

(b) For the reverse direction of (1),

$$T(\mathbf{x}) = T(\mathbf{y}) \implies T(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{y}) = \mathbf{0} \implies \mathbf{x} - \mathbf{y} \in \ker(T) = \mathbf{0} \implies \mathbf{x} = \mathbf{y}$$

2. The proof follows similar idea in (1).

3. Let  $T^{-1} : W \rightarrow V$ . For all  $\mathbf{w}_1, \mathbf{w}_2 \in W$ , there exists  $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2 \in V$  such that  $T(\mathbf{v}_i) = \mathbf{w}_i$ , i.e.,

$$T^{-1}(\mathbf{w}_i) = \mathbf{v}_i \quad i = 1, 2.$$

Consider the mapping

$$\begin{aligned} T(\alpha \mathbf{v}_1 + \beta \mathbf{v}_2) &= \alpha T(\mathbf{v}_1) + \beta T(\mathbf{v}_2) \\ &= \alpha \mathbf{w}_1 + \beta \mathbf{w}_2, \end{aligned}$$

which implies  $\alpha \mathbf{v}_1 + \beta \mathbf{v}_2 = T^{-1}(\alpha \mathbf{w}_1 + \beta \mathbf{w}_2)$ , i.e.,

$$\alpha T^{-1}(\mathbf{w}_1) + \beta T^{-1}(\mathbf{w}_2) = T^{-1}(\alpha \mathbf{w}_1 + \beta \mathbf{w}_2).$$

■

**Definition 2.10** [isomorphism] We say that the vector subspaces  $V$  and  $W$  are isomorphic if there exists a bijective linear transformation  $T : V \rightarrow W$ . ( $V \cong W$ )

This mapping  $T$  is called an **isomorphism** from  $V$  to  $W$ . ■

**R** If  $\dim(V) = \dim(W) = n < \infty$ , then  $V \cong W$ :

Take  $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_n\}, \{\mathbf{w}_1, \dots, \mathbf{w}_n\}$  as basis of  $V$  and  $W$ , respectively. Then one can construct  $T : V \rightarrow W$  satisfying  $T(\mathbf{v}_i) = \mathbf{w}_i$  for  $\forall i$  as follows:

$$T(\alpha_1 \mathbf{v}_1 + \dots + \alpha_n \mathbf{v}_n) = \alpha_1 \mathbf{w}_1 + \dots + \alpha_n \mathbf{w}_n \quad \forall \alpha_i \in \mathbb{F}$$

It's clear that our constructed  $T$  is a linear transformation.

**R**  $V \cong W$  doesn't imply any linear transformations  $T : V \rightarrow W$  is an isomorphism.  
e.g.,  $T(\mathbf{v}) = \mathbf{0}$  is not an isomorphism if  $W \neq \{\mathbf{0}\}$ .

**Theorem 2.3 — Rank-Nullity Theorem.** Let  $T : V \rightarrow W$  be a linear transformation with  $\dim(V) < \infty$ . Then

$$\text{rank}(T) + \text{nullity}(T) = \dim(V).$$

*Proof.* Since  $\ker(T) \leq V$ , by proposition (2.14), there exists  $V_1 \leq V$  such that

$$V = \ker(T) \oplus V_1.$$

1. Consider the transformation  $T|_{V_1}: V_1 \rightarrow T(V_1)$ , which is an isomorphism, since:

- Surjectivity is immediate
- For  $\mathbf{v} \in \ker(T|_{V_1})$ ,

$$T(\mathbf{v}) = \mathbf{0} \implies \mathbf{v} \in \ker(T),$$

which implies  $\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{0}$  since  $\mathbf{v} \in \ker(T) \cap V_1 = \{0\}$ , i.e., the injectivity follows.

Therefore,  $\dim(V_1) = \dim(T(V_1))$ .

2. Secondly, given an isomorphism  $T$  from  $X$  to  $Y$  with  $\dim(X) < \infty$ , then  $\dim(X) = \dim(T(X))$ . The reason follows from assignment 1 questions (8-9):

$$\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_k\} \text{ is a basis of } X \implies \{T(\mathbf{v}_1), \dots, T(\mathbf{v}_k)\} \text{ is a basis of } Y$$

3. Note that  $T(V_1) = T(V) = \text{im}(T)$ , since:

- for  $\forall \mathbf{v} \in V$ ,  $\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{v}_k + \mathbf{v}_1$ , where  $\mathbf{v}_k \in \ker(T)$ ,  $\mathbf{v}_1 \in V_1$ , which implies

$$T(\mathbf{v}) = T(\mathbf{v}_k) + T(\mathbf{v}_1) = \mathbf{0} + T(\mathbf{v}_1),$$

i.e.,  $T(V) \subseteq T(V_1) \subseteq T(V)$ , i.e.,  $T(V) = T(V_1)$ .

4. We can show that  $\dim(V) = \dim(\ker(T)) + \dim(V_1)$ : Let  $\{v_1, \dots, v_k\}$  be a basis of  $\ker(T)$ , and  $\{v_{k+1}, \dots, v_n\}$  be a basis of  $V_1$ , then by the proof of complementation proposition (2.14), we imply  $\{v_1, \dots, v_n\}$  is a basis of  $V$ , i.e.,  $\dim(V) = n = k + (n - k) = \dim(\ker(T)) + \dim(V_1)$ .



Therefore, we imply

$$\begin{aligned}\dim(V) &= \dim(\ker(T)) + \dim(V_1) \\ &= \text{nullity}(T) + \dim(T(V_1)) \\ &= \text{nullity}(T) + \dim(T(V)) \\ &= \text{nullity}(T) + \dim(\text{im}(T)) \\ &= \text{nullity}(T) + \text{rank}(T).\end{aligned}$$

■

## Chapter 3

## Week3

### 3.1. Monday for MAT3040

Reviewing.

1. Complementation. Suppose  $\dim(V) = n < \infty$ , then  $W \leq V$  implies that there exists  $W'$  such that

$$W \oplus W' = V.$$

2. Given the linear transformation  $T : V \rightarrow W$ , define the set  $\ker(T)$  and  $\text{Im}(T)$ .
3. Isomorphism of vector spaces:  $T : V \cong W$
4. Rank-Nullity Theorem

#### 3.1.1. Remarks on Isomorphism

**Proposition 3.1** If  $T : V \rightarrow W$  is an isomorphism, then

1. the set  $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_k\}$  is linearly independent in  $V$  if and only if  $\{T\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, T\mathbf{v}_k\}$  is linearly independent.
2. The same goes if we replace the linearly independence by spans.
3. If  $\dim(V) = n$ , then  $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_n\}$  forms a basis of  $V$  if and only if  $\{T\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, T\mathbf{v}_n\}$  forms a basis of  $W$ . In particular,  $\dim(V) = \dim(W)$ .
4. Two vector spaces with finite dimensions are isomorphic if and only if they have the same dimension:

*Proof.* It suffices to show the reverse direction. Let  $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_n\}$  and  $\{\mathbf{w}_1, \dots, \mathbf{w}_n\}$  be two

basis of  $V, W$ , respectively. Define the linear transformation  $T : V \rightarrow W$  by

$$T(a_1 \mathbf{v}_1 + \cdots + a_n \mathbf{v}_n) = a_1 \mathbf{w}_1 + \cdots + a_n \mathbf{w}_n$$

Then  $T$  is surjective since  $\{\mathbf{w}_1, \dots, \mathbf{w}_n\}$  spans  $W$ ;  $T$  is injective since  $\{\mathbf{w}_1, \dots, \mathbf{w}_n\}$  is linearly independent. ■

### 3.1.2. Change of Basis and Matrix Representation

**Definition 3.1** [Coordinate Vector] Let  $V$  be a finite dimensional vector space and  $B = \{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_n\}$  an **ordered** basis of  $V$ . Any vector  $\mathbf{v} \in V$  can be uniquely written as

$$\mathbf{v} = \alpha_1 \mathbf{v}_1 + \cdots + \alpha_n \mathbf{v}_n,$$

Therefore we define the map  $[\cdot]_{\mathcal{B}} : V \rightarrow \mathbb{F}^n$ , which maps any vector in  $\mathbf{v}$  into its **coordinate vector**:

$$[\mathbf{v}]_{\mathcal{B}} = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_1 \\ \vdots \\ \alpha_n \end{pmatrix}$$

Ⓡ Note that  $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \dots, \mathbf{v}_n\}$  and  $\{\mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_n\}$  are distinct ordered basis.

■ **Example 3.1** Given  $V = M_{2 \times 2}(\mathbb{F})$  and the ordered basis

$$\mathcal{B} = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \right\}$$

Any matrix has the coordinate vector w.r.t.  $\mathcal{B}$ , i.e.,

$$\left[ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 4 \\ 2 & 3 \end{pmatrix} \right]_{\mathcal{B}} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 4 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$$

However, if given another ordered basis

$$\mathcal{B}_1 = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \right\},$$

the matrix may have the different coordinate vector w.r.t.  $\mathcal{B}_1$ :

$$\left[ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 4 \\ 2 & 3 \end{pmatrix} \right]_{\mathcal{B}_1} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$$

**Theorem 3.1** The mapping  $[\cdot]_{\mathcal{B}} : V \rightarrow \mathbb{F}^n$  is an isomorphism.

*Proof.* 1. First show the operator  $[\cdot]_{\mathcal{B}}$  is well-defined, i.e., the same input gives the same output. Suppose that

$$[\mathbf{v}]_{\mathcal{B}} = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_1 \\ \vdots \\ \alpha_n \end{pmatrix} \quad [\mathbf{v}]_{\mathcal{B}} = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha'_1 \\ \vdots \\ \alpha'_n \end{pmatrix},$$

then we imply

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{v} &= \alpha_1 \mathbf{v}_1 + \cdots + \alpha_n \mathbf{v}_n \\ &= \alpha'_1 \mathbf{v}_1 + \cdots + \alpha'_n \mathbf{v}_n. \end{aligned}$$

By the uniqueness of coordinates, we imply  $\alpha_i = \alpha'_i$  for  $i = 1, \dots, n$ .

2. It's clear that the operator  $[\cdot]_{\mathcal{B}}$  is a linear transformation, i.e.,

$$[p\mathbf{v} + q\mathbf{w}]_{\mathcal{B}} = p[\mathbf{v}]_{\mathcal{B}} + q[\mathbf{w}]_{\mathcal{B}} \quad \forall p, q \in \mathbb{F}$$

3. The operator  $[\cdot]_{\mathcal{B}}$  is surjective:

$$[\mathbf{v}]_{\mathcal{B}} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ \vdots \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \implies \mathbf{v} = 0\mathbf{v}_1 + \dots + 0\mathbf{v}_n = \mathbf{0}.$$

4. The injective is clear, i.e.,  $[\mathbf{v}]_{\mathcal{B}} = [\mathbf{w}]_{\mathcal{B}}$  implies  $\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{w}$ .

Therefore,  $[\cdot]_{\mathcal{B}}$  is an isomorphism. ■

We can use the Theorem (3.1) to simplify computations in vector spaces:

■ **Example 3.2** Given a vector sapce  $V = P_3[x]$  and its basis  $B = \{1, x, x^2, x^3\}$ .

To check if the set  $\{1 + x^2, 3 - x^3, x - x^3\}$  is linearly independent, by part (1) in Proposition (3.1) and Theorem (3.1), it suffices to check whether the corresponding coordinate vectors

$$\left\{ \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} \right\}$$

is linearly independent, i.e., do Gaussian Elimination and check the number of pivots. ■

Here gives rise to the question: if  $\mathcal{B}_1, \mathcal{B}_2$  form two basis of  $V$ , then how are  $[\mathbf{v}]_{\mathcal{B}_1}, [\mathbf{v}]_{\mathcal{B}_2}$  related to each other?

Here we consider an easy example first:

■ **Example 3.3** Consider  $V = \mathbb{R}^n$  and its basis  $\mathcal{B}_1 = \{\mathbf{e}_1, \dots, \mathbf{e}_n\}$ . For any  $\mathbf{v} \in V$ ,

$$\mathbf{v} = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_1 \\ \vdots \\ \alpha_n \end{pmatrix} = \alpha_1 \mathbf{e}_1 + \dots + \alpha_n \mathbf{e}_n \implies [\mathbf{v}]_{\mathcal{B}_1} = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_1 \\ \vdots \\ \alpha_n \end{pmatrix}$$

Also, we can construct a different basis of  $V$ :

$$\mathcal{B}_2 = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ \vdots \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ \vdots \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \dots, \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ \vdots \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \right\},$$

which gives a different coordinate vector of  $\mathbf{v}$ :

$$[\mathbf{v}]_{\mathcal{B}_2} = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_1 - \alpha_2 \\ \alpha_2 - \alpha_3 \\ \vdots \\ \alpha_{n-1} - \alpha_n \\ \alpha_n \end{pmatrix}$$

**Proposition 3.2 — Change of Basis.** Let  $\mathcal{A} = \{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_n\}$  and  $\mathcal{A}' = \{\mathbf{w}_1, \dots, \mathbf{w}_n\}$  be two ordered basis of a vector space  $V$ . Define the **change of basis** matrix from  $\mathcal{A}$  to  $\mathcal{A}'$ , say  $C_{\mathcal{A}', \mathcal{A}} := [\alpha_{ij}]$ , where

$$\mathbf{v}_j = \sum_{i=1}^m \alpha_{ij} \mathbf{w}_i$$

Then for any vector  $\mathbf{v} \in V$ , the *change of basis amounts to left-multiplying the change of basis matrix*:

$$C_{\mathcal{A}', \mathcal{A}}[\mathbf{v}]_{\mathcal{A}} = [\mathbf{v}]_{\mathcal{A}'} \quad (3.1)$$

Define matrix  $C_{\mathcal{A},\mathcal{A}'} := [\beta_{ij}]$ , where

$$\mathbf{w}_j = \sum_{i=1}^n \beta_{ij} \mathbf{v}_i$$

Then we imply that

$$(C_{\mathcal{A},\mathcal{A}'})^{-1} = C_{\mathcal{A}',\mathcal{A}}$$

*Proof.* 1. First show (3.1) holds for  $\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{v}_j, j = 1, \dots, n$ :

$$\begin{aligned} \text{LHS of (3.1)} &= [\alpha_{ij}] \mathbf{e}_j = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_{1j} \\ \vdots \\ \alpha_{nj} \end{pmatrix} \\ \text{RHS of (3.1)} &= [\mathbf{v}_j]_{\mathcal{A}'} = \left[ \sum_{i=1}^n \alpha_i \mathbf{w}_i \right]_{\mathcal{A}'} = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_{1j} \\ \vdots \\ \alpha_{nj} \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

Therefore,

$$C_{\mathcal{A}',\mathcal{A}}[\mathbf{v}_j]_{\mathcal{A}} = [\mathbf{v}_j]_{\mathcal{A}'}, \quad \forall j = 1, \dots, n. \quad (3.2)$$

2. Then for any  $\mathbf{v} \in V$ , we imply  $\mathbf{v} = r_1 \mathbf{v}_1 + \dots + r_n \mathbf{v}_n$ , which implies that

$$C_{\mathcal{A}',\mathcal{A}}[\mathbf{v}]_{\mathcal{A}} = C_{\mathcal{A}',\mathcal{A}}[r_1 \mathbf{v}_1 + \dots + r_n \mathbf{v}_n]_{\mathcal{A}} \quad (3.3a)$$

$$= C_{\mathcal{A}',\mathcal{A}}(r_1 [\mathbf{v}_1]_{\mathcal{A}} + \dots + r_n [\mathbf{v}_n]_{\mathcal{A}}) \quad (3.3b)$$

$$= \sum_{j=1}^n r_j C_{\mathcal{A}',\mathcal{A}}[\mathbf{v}_j]_{\mathcal{A}} \quad (3.3c)$$

$$= \sum_{j=1}^n r_j [\mathbf{v}_j]_{\mathcal{A}'} \quad (3.3d)$$

$$= \left[ \sum_{j=1}^n r_j \mathbf{v}_j \right]_{\mathcal{A}'} \quad (3.3e)$$

$$= [\mathbf{v}]_{\mathcal{A}'} \quad (3.3f)$$

where (3.3a) and (3.3e) is by applying the linearity of  $[\cdot]_{\mathcal{A}}$  and  $[\cdot]_{\mathcal{A}'}$ ; (3.3d) is by applying the result (3.12). Therefore (3.1) is shown for  $\forall \mathbf{v} \in V$ .

3. Now we show that  $(C_{\mathcal{A}\mathcal{A}'}C_{\mathcal{A}'\mathcal{A}}) = \mathbf{I}_n$ . Note that

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{v}_j &= \sum_{i=1}^n \alpha_{ij} \mathbf{w}_i \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^n \alpha_{ij} \sum_{k=1}^n \beta_{ki} \mathbf{v}_k \\ &= \sum_{k=1}^n \left( \sum_{i=1}^n \beta_{ki} \alpha_{ij} \right) \mathbf{v}_i\end{aligned}$$

By the uniqueness of coordinates, we imply

$$\left( \sum_{i=1}^n \beta_{ki} \alpha_{ij} \right) = \delta_{jk} := \begin{cases} 1, & j = k \\ 0, & j \neq k \end{cases}$$

By the matrix multiplication, the  $(k, j)$ -th entry for  $C_{\mathcal{A}\mathcal{A}'}C_{\mathcal{A}'\mathcal{A}}$  is

$$[C_{\mathcal{A}\mathcal{A}'}C_{\mathcal{A}'\mathcal{A}}]_{kj} = \left( \sum_{i=1}^n \beta_{ki} \alpha_{ij} \right) = \delta_{jk} \implies (C_{\mathcal{A}\mathcal{A}'}C_{\mathcal{A}'\mathcal{A}}) = \mathbf{I}_n$$

Noew, suppose

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{v}_j &= \sum_{i=1}^n \alpha_{ij} \mathbf{w}_i \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^n \alpha_{ij} \sum_{k=1}^n \beta_{ki} \mathbf{v}_k \\ &= \sum_{k=1}^n \left( \sum_{i=1}^n \beta_{ki} \alpha_{ij} \right) \mathbf{v}_i\end{aligned}$$

By the uniqueness of coordinates, we imply

$$\left( \sum_{i=1}^n \beta_{ki} \alpha_{ij} \right) = \begin{cases} 1, & j = k \\ 0, & j \neq k \end{cases}$$

where

$$\left( \sum_{i=1}^n \beta_{ki} \alpha_{ij} \right) = (C_{AA'}C_{A'A}).$$

Therefore,  $(C_{AA'}C_{A'A}) = \mathbf{I}_n$ . ■



■ **Example 3.4** Back to Example (3.3), write  $\mathcal{B}_1, \mathcal{B}_2$  as

$$\mathcal{B}_1 = \{\mathbf{e}_1, \dots, \mathbf{e}_n\}, \quad \mathcal{B}_2 = \{\mathbf{w}_1, \dots, \mathbf{w}_n\}$$

and therefore  $\mathbf{w}_i = \mathbf{e}_1 + \dots + \mathbf{e}_i$ . The change of basis matrix is given by

$$C_{\mathcal{B}_1, \mathcal{B}_2} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & \dots & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & \dots & 1 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & \dots & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

which implies that for  $\mathbf{v}$  in the example,

$$C_{\mathcal{B}_1, \mathcal{B}_2} [\mathbf{v}]_{\mathcal{B}_2} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & \dots & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & \dots & 1 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & \dots & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_1 - \alpha_2 \\ \vdots \\ \alpha_{n-1} - \alpha_n \\ \alpha_n \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_1 \\ \vdots \\ \alpha_n \end{pmatrix} = [\mathbf{v}]_{\mathcal{B}_1}$$

■

**Definition 3.2** Let  $T : V \rightarrow W$  be a linear transformation, and

$$\mathcal{A} = \{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_m\}, \quad \mathcal{B} = \{\mathbf{w}_1, \dots, \mathbf{w}_m\}$$

be basis of  $V$  and  $W$ , respectively. The **matrix representation** of  $T$  with respect to (w.r.t.)  $\mathcal{A}$  and  $\mathcal{B}$  is defined as  $(T)_{\mathcal{B}\mathcal{A}} := (\alpha_{ij}) \in M_{m \times m}(\mathbb{F})$ , where

$$T(\mathbf{v}_j) = \sum_{i=1}^m \alpha_{ij} \mathbf{w}_i$$

■

## 3.4. Wednesday for MAT3040

### 3.4.1. Remarks for the Change of Basis

Reviewing.

- $[\cdot]_{\mathcal{A}} : V \rightarrow \mathbb{F}^n$  denotes coordinate vector mapping
- Change of Basis matrix:  $C_{\mathcal{A}', \mathcal{A}}$
- $T : V \rightarrow W$ ,  $\mathcal{A} = \{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_n\}$  and  $\mathcal{B} = \{\mathbf{w}_1, \dots, \mathbf{w}_m\}$ .

$$\text{Hom}_{\mathbb{F}}(V, W) \rightarrow M_{m \times n}(\mathbb{F})$$

■ **Example 3.10** Let  $V = \mathbb{P}_3[x]$  and  $\mathcal{A} = \{1, x, x^2, x^3\}$ .

Let  $T : V \rightarrow V$  defined as  $p(x) \mapsto p'(x)$ :

$$\begin{cases} T(1) = 0 \cdot 1 + 0 \cdot x + 0 \cdot x^2 + 0 \cdot x^3 \\ T(x) = 1 \cdot 1 + 0 \cdot x + 0 \cdot x^2 + 0 \cdot x^3 \\ T(x^2) = 0 \cdot 1 + 2 \cdot x + 0 \cdot x^2 + 0 \cdot x^3 \\ T(x^3) = 0 \cdot 1 + 0 \cdot x + 3 \cdot x^2 + 0 \cdot x^3 \end{cases}$$

We can define the change of basis matrix for a linear transformation  $T$  as well, w.r.t.  $\mathcal{A}$  and  $\mathcal{A}$ :

$$C_{\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{A}} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 3 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

Also, we can define a different basis  $\mathcal{A}' = \{x^3, x^2, x, 1\}$  for the output space for  $T$ , say  $T : V_{\mathcal{A}} \rightarrow V_{\mathcal{A}'}$ :

$$(T)_{\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{A}'} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 3 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

Our observation is that the corresponding coordinate vectors before and after linear transformation admits a matrix multiplication:

$$\begin{aligned}
 (2x^2 + 4x^3) &\xrightarrow{T} ((4x + 12x^2)) \\
 (2x^2 + 4x^3)_{\mathcal{A}} &= \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 2 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} & (4x + 12x^2)_{\mathcal{A}} &= \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 4 \\ 12 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \\
 \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 3 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 2 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} &= \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 4 \\ 12 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \\
 C_{\mathcal{A}\mathcal{A}} \cdot (2x^2 + 4x^3)_{\mathcal{A}} &= (4x + 12x^2)_{\mathcal{A}}
 \end{aligned}$$

**Theorem 3.3 — Matrix Representation.** Let  $T : V \rightarrow W$  be a linear transformation of finite dimensional vector spaces. Let  $\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{B}$  the ordered basis of  $V, W$ , respectively. Then the following diagram holds:

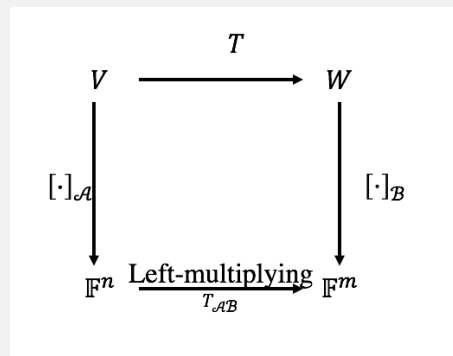


Figure 3.2: Diagram for the matrix representation, where  $n := \dim(V)$  and  $m := \dim(W)$

namely, for any  $\mathbf{v} \in V$ ,

$$(T)_{\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{A}}(\mathbf{v})_{\mathcal{A}} = (T\mathbf{v})_{\mathcal{B}}$$

Therefore, we can compute  $T\mathbf{v}$  by matrix multiplication.

Therefore, linear transformation corresponds to coordinate matrix multiplication.

*Proof.* Suppose  $\mathcal{A} = \{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_n\}$  and  $\mathcal{B} = \{\mathbf{w}_1, \dots, \mathbf{w}_m\}$ . The proof of this theorem follows the same procedure of that in Theorem (3.1)

1. We show this result for  $\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{v}_j$  first:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{LHS} &= [\alpha_{ij}] \mathbf{e}_j = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_{1j} \\ \vdots \\ \alpha_{nj} \end{pmatrix} \\ \text{RHS} &= (T\mathbf{v}_j)_{\mathcal{B}} = \left( \sum_{i=1}^m \alpha_{ij} \mathbf{w}_i \right)_{\mathcal{B}} = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_{1j} \\ \vdots \\ \alpha_{nj} \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

2. Then we show the theorem holds for any  $\mathbf{v} := \sum_{j=1}^n r_j \mathbf{v}_j$  in  $V$ :

$$(T)_{\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{A}}(\mathbf{v})_{\mathcal{A}} = (T)_{\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{A}} \left( \sum_{j=1}^n r_j \mathbf{v}_j \right)_{\mathcal{A}} \quad (3.8a)$$

$$= (T)_{\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{A}} \left( \sum_{j=1}^n r_j (\mathbf{v}_j)_{\mathcal{A}} \right) \quad (3.8b)$$

$$= \sum_{j=1}^n r_j (T)_{\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{A}}(\mathbf{v}_j)_{\mathcal{A}} \quad (3.8c)$$

$$= \sum_{j=1}^n r_j (T\mathbf{v}_j)_{\mathcal{B}} \quad (3.8d)$$

$$= \left( \sum_{j=1}^n r_j (T\mathbf{v}_j) \right)_{\mathcal{B}} \quad (3.8e)$$

$$= \left[ T \left( \sum_{j=1}^n r_j \mathbf{v}_j \right) \right]_{\mathcal{B}} \quad (3.8f)$$

$$= (T\mathbf{v})_{\mathcal{B}} \quad (3.8g)$$

The justification for (3.8a) is similar to that shown in Theorem (3.1). The proof is complete. ■

- R Consider a special case for Theorem (3.3), i.e.,  $T = \text{id}$  and  $\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{A}'$  are two ordered basis for the input and output space, respectively. Then the result in Theorem (3.3) implies

$$C_{\mathcal{A}', \mathcal{A}}(\mathbf{v})_{\mathcal{A}} = (\mathbf{v})_{\mathcal{A}'}$$

i.e., the matrix representation theorem (3.3) is a general case for the change of basis theorem (3.1)

**Proposition 3.6 — Functoriality.** Suppose  $V, W, U$  are finite dimensional vector spaces, and let  $\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{B}, \mathcal{C}$  be the ordered basis for  $V, W, U$ , respectively. Suppose that

$$T : V \rightarrow W, \quad S : W \rightarrow U$$

are given two linear transformations, then

$$(S \circ T)_{\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{A}} = (S)_{\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{B}}(T)_{\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{A}}$$

Composition of linear transformation corresponds to the multiplication of change of basis matrices.

*Proof.* Suppose the ordered basis  $\mathcal{A} = \{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_n\}$ ,  $\mathcal{B} = \{\mathbf{w}_1, \dots, \mathbf{w}_m\}$ ,  $\mathcal{C} = \{\mathbf{u}_1, \dots, \mathbf{u}_p\}$ . By definition of change of basis matrices,

$$T(\mathbf{v}_j) = \sum_i (T_{\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{A}})_{ij} \mathbf{w}_i$$

$$S(\mathbf{w}_i) = \sum_k (S_{\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{B}})_{ki} \mathbf{u}_k$$

We start from the  $j$ -th column of  $(S \circ T)_{C, \mathcal{A}}$  for  $j = 1, \dots, n$ , namely

$$(S \circ T)_{C, \mathcal{A}}(\mathbf{v}_j)_{\mathcal{A}} = (S \circ T(\mathbf{v}_j))_C \quad (3.9a)$$

$$= \left[ S \circ \left( \sum_i (T_{\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{A}})_{ij} \mathbf{w}_i \right) \right]_C \quad (3.9b)$$

$$= \sum_i (T_{\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{A}})_{ij} (S(\mathbf{w}_i))_C \quad (3.9c)$$

$$= \sum_i (T_{\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{A}})_{ij} \left( \sum_k (S_{C, \mathcal{B}})_{ki} \mathbf{u}_k \right)_C \quad (3.9d)$$

$$= \sum_k \sum_i (S_{C, \mathcal{B}})_{ki} (T_{\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{A}})_{ij} (\mathbf{u}_k)_C \quad (3.9e)$$

$$= \sum_k (S_{C, \mathcal{B}} T_{\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{A}})_{kj} (\mathbf{u}_k)_C \quad (3.9f)$$

$$= \sum_k (S_{C, \mathcal{B}} T_{\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{A}})_{kj} \mathbf{e}_k \quad (3.9g)$$

$$= j\text{-th column of } [S_{C, \mathcal{B}} T_{\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{A}}] \quad (3.9h)$$

where (3.9a) is by the result in theorem (3.3); (3.9b) and (3.9d) follows from definitions of  $T(\mathbf{v}_j)$  and  $S(\mathbf{w}_i)$ ; (3.9c) and (3.9e) follows from the linearity of  $C$ ; (3.9f) follows from the matrix multiplication definition; (3.9g) is because  $(\mathbf{u}_k)_C = \mathbf{e}_k$ .

Therefore,  $(S \circ T)_{C, \mathcal{A}}$  and  $(S_{C, \mathcal{B}})(T_{\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{A}})$  share the same  $j$ -th column, and thus equal to each other. ■

**Corollary 3.2** Suppose that  $S$  and  $T$  are two identity mappings  $V \rightarrow V$ , and consider  $(S)_{\mathcal{A}', \mathcal{A}}$  and  $(T)_{\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{A}'}$  in proposition (3.6), then

$$(S \circ T)_{\mathcal{A}', \mathcal{A}'} = (S)_{\mathcal{A}', \mathcal{A}} (T)_{\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{A}'}$$

Therefore,

$$\text{Identity matrix} = C_{\mathcal{A}', \mathcal{A}} C_{\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{A}'}$$

**Proposition 3.7** Let  $T : V \rightarrow W$  with  $\dim(V) = n, \dim(W) = m$ , and let

- $\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{A}'$  be ordered basis of  $V$

- $\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{B}'$  be ordered basis of  $W$

then the change of basis matrices admit the relation

$$(T)_{\mathcal{B}', \mathcal{A}'} = C_{\mathcal{B}', \mathcal{B}}(T)_{\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{A}}C_{\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{A}'} \quad (3.10)$$

Here note that  $(T)_{\mathcal{B}', \mathcal{A}'}, (T)_{\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{A}} \in \mathbb{F}^{m \times n}$ ;  $C_{\mathcal{B}', \mathcal{B}} \in \mathbb{F}^{m \times m}$ ; and  $C_{\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{A}'} \in \mathbb{F}^{n \times n}$ .

*Proof.* Let  $\mathcal{A} = \{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_n\}, \mathcal{A}' = \{\mathbf{v}'_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}'_n\}$ . Consider simplifying the  $j$ -th column for the LHS and RHS of (3.10) and showing they are equal:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{LHS} &= (T)_{\mathcal{B}', \mathcal{A}'} \mathbf{e}_j \\ &= (T)_{\mathcal{B}', \mathcal{A}'}(\mathbf{v}'_j)_{\mathcal{A}'} \\ &= (T\mathbf{v}'_j)_{\mathcal{B}'} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{RHS} &= C_{\mathcal{B}', \mathcal{B}}(T)_{\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{A}}C_{\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{A}'} \mathbf{e}_j \\ &= C_{\mathcal{B}', \mathcal{B}}(T)_{\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{A}}C_{\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{A}'}(\mathbf{v}'_j)_{\mathcal{A}'} \\ &= C_{\mathcal{B}', \mathcal{B}}(T)_{\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{A}}(\mathbf{v}'_j)_{\mathcal{A}} \\ &= C_{\mathcal{B}', \mathcal{B}}(T\mathbf{v}'_j)_{\mathcal{B}} \\ &= (T\mathbf{v}'_j)_{\mathcal{B}'} \end{aligned}$$

■

**R** Let  $T : V \rightarrow V$  be a linear operator with  $\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{A}'$  being two ordered basis of  $V$ , then

$$(T)_{\mathcal{A}', \mathcal{A}'} = C_{\mathcal{A}', \mathcal{A}}(T)_{\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{A}}C_{\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{A}'} = (C_{\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{A}'})^{-1}(T)_{\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{A}}C_{\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{A}'}$$

Therefore, the change of basis matrices  $(T)_{\mathcal{A}', \mathcal{A}'}$  and  $(T)_{\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{A}}$  are similar to each other, which means they share the same eigenvalues, determinant, trace.

Therefore, two similar matrices corresponds to same linear transformation using different basis.

# Chapter 4

## Week4

### 4.1. Monday for MAT3040

#### 4.1.1. Quotient Spaces

Now we aim to divide a big **vector space** into many pieces of slices.

- For example, the Cartesian plane can be expressed as union of set of vertical lines as follows:

$$\mathbb{R}^2 = \bigcup_{m \in \mathbb{R}} \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} m \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + \text{span}\{(0,1)\} \right\}$$

- Another example is that the set of integers can be expressed as union of three sets:

$$\mathbb{Z} = Z_1 \cup Z_2 \cup Z_3,$$

where  $Z_i$  is the set of integers  $z$  such that  $z \bmod 3 = i$ .

**Definition 4.1** [Coset] Let  $V$  be a vector space and  $W \leq V$ . For any element  $\mathbf{v} \in V$ , the **(right) coset** determined by  $\mathbf{v}$  is the set

$$\mathbf{v} + W := \{\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{w} \mid \mathbf{w} \in W\}$$

For example, consider  $V = \mathbb{R}^3$  and  $W = \text{span}\{(1,2,0)\}$ . Then the coset determined by



$\mathbf{v} = (5, 6, -3)$  can be written as

$$\mathbf{v} + W = \{(5 + t, 6 + 2t, -3) \mid t \in \mathbb{R}\}$$

It's interesting that the coset determined by  $\mathbf{v}' = (4, 4, -3)$  is exactly the same as the coset shown above:

$$\mathbf{v}' + W = \{(4 + t, 4 + 2t, -3) \mid t \in \mathbb{R}\} = \mathbf{v} + W.$$

Therefore, write the exact expression of  $\mathbf{v} + W$  may sometimes become tedious and hard to check the equivalence. We say  $\mathbf{v}$  is a **representative** of a coset  $\mathbf{v} + W$ .

**Proposition 4.1** Two cosets are the same iff the subtraction for the corresponding representatives is in  $W$ , i.e.,

$$\mathbf{v}_1 + W = \mathbf{v}_2 + W \iff \mathbf{v}_1 - \mathbf{v}_2 \in W$$

*Proof. Necessity.* Suppose that  $\mathbf{v}_1 + W = \mathbf{v}_2 + W$ , then  $\mathbf{v}_1 + \mathbf{w}_1 = \mathbf{v}_2 + \mathbf{w}_2$  for some  $\mathbf{w}_1, \mathbf{w}_2 \in W$ , which implies

$$\mathbf{v}_1 - \mathbf{v}_2 = \mathbf{w}_2 - \mathbf{w}_1 \in W$$

*Sufficiency.* Suppose that  $\mathbf{v}_1 - \mathbf{v}_2 = \mathbf{w} \in W$ . It suffices to show  $\mathbf{v}_1 + W \subseteq \mathbf{v}_2 + W$ . For any  $\mathbf{v}_1 + \mathbf{w}' \in \mathbf{v}_1 + W$ , this element can be expressed as

$$\mathbf{v}_1 + \mathbf{w}' = (\mathbf{v}_2 + \mathbf{w}) + \mathbf{w}' = \mathbf{v}_2 + \underbrace{(\mathbf{w} + \mathbf{w}')}_{\text{belong to } W} \in \mathbf{v}_2 + W.$$

Therefore,  $\mathbf{v}_1 + W \subseteq \mathbf{v}_2 + W$ . Similarly we can show that  $\mathbf{v}_2 + W \subseteq \mathbf{v}_1 + W$ . ■

*Exercise:* Two cosets with representatives  $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2$  have no intersection iff  $\mathbf{v}_1 - \mathbf{v}_2 \notin W$ .

**Definition 4.2** [Quotient Space] The **quotient space** of  $V$  by the subspace  $W$ , is the collection of all cosets  $\mathbf{v} + W$ , denoted by  $V/W$ . ■

To make the quotient space a vector space structure, we define the addition and scalar

multiplication on  $V/W$  by:

$$(\mathbf{v}_1 + W) + (\mathbf{v}_2 + W) := (\mathbf{v}_1 + \mathbf{v}_2) + W$$

$$\alpha \cdot (\mathbf{v} + W) := (\alpha \cdot \mathbf{v}) + W$$

For example, consider  $V = \mathbb{R}^2$  and  $W = \text{span}\{(0,1)\}$ . Then note that

$$\begin{aligned} \left( \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + W \right) + \left( \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + W \right) &= \left( \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + W \right) \\ \pi \cdot \left( \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + W \right) &= \left( \begin{pmatrix} \pi \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + W \right) \end{aligned}$$

**Proposition 4.2** The addition and scalar multiplication is well-defined.

*Proof.* 1. Suppose that

$$\begin{cases} \mathbf{v}_1 + W = \mathbf{v}'_1 + W \\ \mathbf{v}_2 + W = \mathbf{v}'_2 + W \end{cases}, \quad (4.1)$$

and we need to show that  $(\mathbf{v}_1 + \mathbf{v}_2) + W = (\mathbf{v}'_1 + \mathbf{v}'_2) + W$ .

From (4.1) and proposition (4.1), we imply

$$\mathbf{v}_1 - \mathbf{v}'_1 \in W, \quad \mathbf{v}_2 - \mathbf{v}'_2 \in W$$

which implies

$$(\mathbf{v}_1 - \mathbf{v}'_1) + (\mathbf{v}_2 - \mathbf{v}'_2) = (\mathbf{v}_1 + \mathbf{v}_2) - (\mathbf{v}'_1 + \mathbf{v}'_2) \in W$$

By proposition (4.1) again we imply  $(\mathbf{v}_1 + \mathbf{v}_2) + W = (\mathbf{v}'_1 + \mathbf{v}'_2) + W$

2. For scalar multiplication, similarly, we can show that  $\mathbf{v}_1 + W = \mathbf{v}'_1 + W$  implies

$\alpha \mathbf{v}_1 + W = \alpha \mathbf{v}'_1 + W$  for all  $\alpha \in \mathbb{F}$ .

■

**Proposition 4.3** The canonical projection mapping

$$\pi_W : V \rightarrow V/W,$$

$$\mathbf{v} \mapsto \mathbf{v} + W,$$

is a **surjective linear transformation** with  $\ker(\pi_W) = W$ .

*Proof.* 1. First we show that  $\ker(\pi_W) = W$ :

$$\pi_W(\mathbf{v}) = 0 \implies \mathbf{v} + W = \mathbf{0}_{V/W} \implies \mathbf{v} + W = \mathbf{0} + W \implies \mathbf{v} = (\mathbf{v} - \mathbf{0}) \in W$$

Here note that the zero element in the quotient space  $V/W$  is the coset with representative  $\mathbf{0}$ .

2. For any  $\mathbf{v}_0 + W \in V/W$ , we can construct  $\mathbf{v}_0 \in V$  such that  $\pi_W(\mathbf{v}_0) = \mathbf{v}_0 + W$ . Therefore the mapping  $\pi_W$  is surjective.
3. To show the mapping  $\pi_W$  is a linear transformation, note that

$$\begin{aligned} \pi_W(\alpha \mathbf{v}_1 + \beta \mathbf{v}_2) &= (\alpha \mathbf{v}_1 + \beta \mathbf{v}_2) + W \\ &= (\alpha \mathbf{v}_1 + W) + (\beta \mathbf{v}_2 + W) \\ &= \alpha(\mathbf{v}_1 + W) + \beta(\mathbf{v}_2 + W) \\ &= \alpha \pi_W(\mathbf{v}_1) + \beta \pi_W(\mathbf{v}_2) \end{aligned}$$

■

### 4.1.2. First Isomorphism Theorem

The key of linear algebra is to solve the linear system  $\mathbf{A}\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$  with  $\mathbf{A} \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times n}$ . The general step for solving this linear system is as follows:

1. Find the solution set for  $\mathbf{A}\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$ , i.e., the set  $\ker(\mathbf{A})$
2. Find a particular solution  $\mathbf{x}_0$  such that  $\mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}_0 = \mathbf{b}$ .

Then the general solution set to this linear system is  $\mathbf{x}_0 + \ker(\mathbf{A})$ , which is a coset in

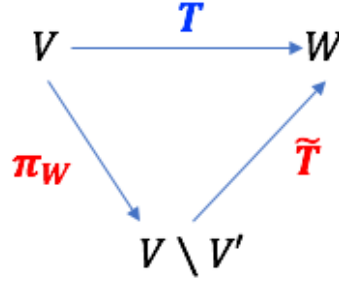
the space  $\mathbb{R}^n / \ker(\mathbf{A})$ . Therefore, to solve the linear system  $\mathbf{Ax} = \mathbf{b}$  suffices to study the quotient space  $\mathbb{R}^n / \ker(\mathbf{A})$ :

**Proposition 4.4 — Universal Property I.** Suppose that  $T : V \rightarrow W$  is a linear transformation, and that  $V' \leq \ker(T)$ . Then the mapping

$$\tilde{T} : V/V' \rightarrow W$$

$$\mathbf{v} + V' \mapsto T(\mathbf{v})$$

is a well-defined linear transformation. As a result, the diagram below commutes:



In other words, we have  $T = \tilde{T} \circ \pi_W$ .

*Proof.* First we show the well-definedness. Suppose that  $\mathbf{v}_1 + V' = \mathbf{v}_2 + V'$  and suffices to show  $\tilde{T}(\mathbf{v}_1 + V') = \tilde{T}(\mathbf{v}_2 + V')$ , i.e.,  $T(\mathbf{v}_1) = T(\mathbf{v}_2)$ . By proposition (4.1), we imply

$$\mathbf{v}_1 - \mathbf{v}_2 \in V' \leq \ker(T) \implies T(\mathbf{v}_1 - \mathbf{v}_2) = \mathbf{0} \implies T(\mathbf{v}_1) - T(\mathbf{v}_2) = \mathbf{0}.$$

Then we show  $\tilde{T}$  is a linear transformation:

$$\begin{aligned}
 \tilde{T}(\alpha(\mathbf{v}_1 + V') + \beta(\mathbf{v}_2 + V')) &= \tilde{T}((\alpha\mathbf{v}_1 + \beta\mathbf{v}_2) + V') \\
 &= T(\alpha\mathbf{v}_1 + \beta\mathbf{v}_2) \\
 &= \alpha T(\mathbf{v}_1) + \beta T(\mathbf{v}_2) \\
 &= \alpha \tilde{T}(\mathbf{v}_1 + V') + \beta \tilde{T}(\mathbf{v}_2 + V')
 \end{aligned}$$

■

Actually, if we let  $V' = \ker(T)$ , the mapping  $\tilde{T} : V/V' \rightarrow T(V)$  forms an isomorphism. In particular, if further  $T$  is surjective, then  $T(V) = W$ , i.e., the mapping  $\tilde{T} : V/V' \rightarrow W$  forms an isomorphism.

**Theorem 4.1 — First Isomorphism Theorem.** Let  $T : V \rightarrow W$  be a surjective linear transformation. Then the mapping

$$\begin{aligned}\tilde{T} : V/\ker(T) &\rightarrow W \\ \mathbf{v} + \ker(T) &\mapsto T(\mathbf{v})\end{aligned}$$

is an isomorphism.

*Proof. Injectivity.* Suppose that  $\tilde{T}(\mathbf{v}_1 + \ker(T)) = \tilde{T}(\mathbf{v}_2 + \ker(T))$ , then we imply

$$T(\mathbf{v}_1) = T(\mathbf{v}_2) \implies T(\mathbf{v}_1 - \mathbf{v}_2) = \mathbf{0}_W \implies \mathbf{v}_1 - \mathbf{v}_2 \in \ker(T),$$

i.e.,  $\mathbf{v}_1 + \ker(T) = \mathbf{v}_2 + \ker(T)$ .

*Surjectivity.* For  $\mathbf{w} \in W$ , due to the surjectivity of  $T$ , we can find a  $\mathbf{v}_0$  such that  $T(\mathbf{v}_0) = \mathbf{w}$ . Therefore, we can construct a set  $\mathbf{v}_0 + \ker(T)$  such that

$$\tilde{T}(\mathbf{v}_0 + \ker(T)) = \mathbf{w}.$$

■

## 4.4. Wednesday for MAT3040

Reviewing.

- Quotient Space:

$$V/W = \{v + W \mid v \in V\}$$

The elements in  $V/W$  are cosets. Note that  $V/W$  does not mean a subset of  $V$ .

- Define the canonical projection mapping

$$\pi_W : V \rightarrow V/W,$$

$$\text{with } v \mapsto v + W,$$

then we imply  $\pi_W$  is a surjective linear transformation with  $\ker(\pi_W) = W$ .

If  $\dim(V) < \infty$ , then by Rank-Nullity Theorem (2.3), we imply that

$$\dim(V) = \dim(W) + \dim(V/W),$$

i.e.,  $\dim(V/W) = \dim(V) - \dim(W)$ .

- **(Universal Property I)** Every linear transformation  $T : V \rightarrow W$  with  $V' \leq \ker(T)$  can be descended to the composition of the canonical projection mapping  $\pi_{V'}$  and the mapping

$$\tilde{T} : V/V' \rightarrow W$$

$$\text{with } v + V' \mapsto T(v).$$

In other words, the diagram (2.1) commutes:

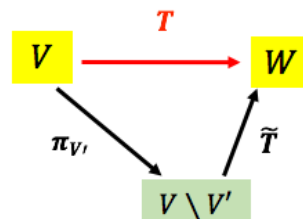


Diagram (2.1)

In other words, the mapping starting from either the black or red line gives the same result, i.e.,  $T(\mathbf{v}) = \tilde{T} \circ \pi_{V'}(\mathbf{v}) = \tilde{T}(\mathbf{v} + V')$  for any  $\mathbf{v} \in V$ .

- **(First Isomorphism Theorem)** Under the setting of Universal Property I (UPI), if  $T$  is a surjective linear transformation with  $V' = \ker(T)$ , then the  $\tilde{T}$  is an isomorphism.

■ **Example 4.2** Suppose that  $U, W \leq V$  with  $U \cap W = \{\mathbf{0}\}$ , then define the mapping

$$\begin{aligned} \phi : U \oplus W &\rightarrow U \\ \text{with } \phi(\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{w}) &= \mathbf{u} \end{aligned}$$

(R) Exercise: if  $U, W \leq V$  but  $U \cap W \neq \{\mathbf{0}\}$ , then the mapping

$$\begin{aligned} \phi : U + W &\rightarrow U \\ \text{with } \mathbf{u} + \mathbf{w} &\mapsto \mathbf{u} \end{aligned} \quad \text{is not well-defined:}$$

Suppose that  $\mathbf{0} \neq \mathbf{v} \in U \cap W$  and for any  $\mathbf{u} \in U, \mathbf{w} \in W$ , we construct

$$\mathbf{u}' = \mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v} \in U, \quad \mathbf{w}' = \mathbf{w} + \mathbf{v} \in W \implies \phi(\mathbf{u}' + \mathbf{w}') = \mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}$$

Therefore we get  $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{w} = \mathbf{u}' + \mathbf{w}'$  but  $\phi(\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{w}) \neq \phi(\mathbf{u}' + \mathbf{w}')$ .

Back to the situation  $U \cap W = \{\mathbf{0}\}$ , then it's clear that  $\phi : U \oplus W \rightarrow U$  is surjective linear transformation with  $\ker(\phi) = W$ . Therefore, construct the new mapping

$$\begin{aligned} \tilde{\phi} : U \oplus W / W &\rightarrow U \\ \text{with } \mathbf{u} + \mathbf{w} + W &\mapsto \phi(\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{w}) \end{aligned}$$

We imply  $\tilde{\phi}$  is an isomorphism by First Isomorphism Theorem. ■

Now we study the generalized quotients, which is defined to satisfy the generalized version of universal property I.

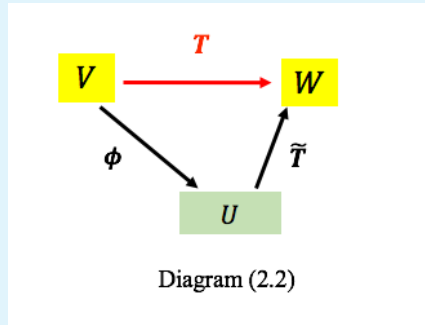
**Definition 4.7** [Universal Property for Quotients] Let  $V$  be a vector space and  $V' \leq V$ . Consider the collection of linear transformations

$$\text{Obj} = \left\{ T : V \rightarrow W \left| \begin{array}{l} T \text{ is a linear transformation} \\ V' \leq \ker(T) \end{array} \right. \right\}$$

(For example,  $\pi_{V'} : V \rightarrow V/V'$  is an element from the set  $\text{Obj}$ .)

An element  $(\phi : V \rightarrow U) \in \text{Obj}$  is said to satisfy the **universal property** if it satisfies the following:

Given any element  $(T : V \rightarrow W) \in \text{Obj}$ , we can extend the transformation  $\phi$  with a **uniquely existing**  $\tilde{T} : U \rightarrow W$  so that the diagram (2.2) commutes:



Or equivalently, for given  $(T : V \rightarrow W) \in \text{Obj}$ , there exists the **unique** mapping  $\tilde{T} : U \rightarrow W$  such that  $T = \tilde{T} \circ \phi$ .

**Theorem 4.3 — Universal Property II.**

1. The mapping  $(\pi_{V'} : V \rightarrow V/V') \in \text{Obj}$  is a universal object, i.e., it satisfies the universal property.
2. If  $(\phi : V \rightarrow U)$  is a universal object, then  $U \cong V/V'$ , i.e., there is intrinsically “one” element in the set of universal objects.

*Proof.* 1. Consider any linear transformation  $T : V \rightarrow W$  such that  $V' \leq \ker(T)$ , then define (construct) the same  $\tilde{T} : V/V' \rightarrow W$  as that in UPI. Therefore, for given  $T$ , applying the result of UPI, we imply  $T = \tilde{T} \circ \pi_{V'}$ , i.e.,  $\pi_{V'}$  satisfies the diagram (2.2).



To show the uniqueness of  $\tilde{T}$ , suppose there exists  $\tilde{S} : V/V' \rightarrow W$  such that the diagram (2.3) commutes.

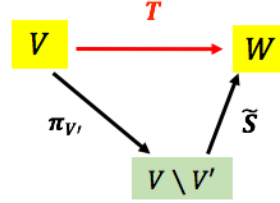


Diagram (2.3)

It suffices to show the mapping  $\tilde{S} = \tilde{T}$ : for any  $\mathbf{v} + V' \in V/V'$ , we have

$$\tilde{S}(\mathbf{v} + V') := \tilde{S} \circ \pi_{V'}(\mathbf{v}) = T(\mathbf{v}),$$

where the first equality is due to the surjectivity of  $\pi_{V'}$ . By the result of UPI,  $T(\mathbf{v}) = \tilde{T}(\mathbf{v} + V')$ . Therefore  $\tilde{T}(\mathbf{v} + V') = \tilde{S}(\mathbf{v} + V')$  for all  $\mathbf{v} + V' \in V/V'$ . The proof is complete.

2. Suppose that  $(\phi : V \rightarrow U)$  satisfies the universal property. In particular, the following two diagrams hold:

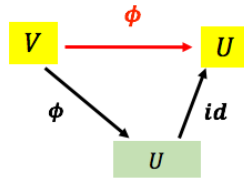


Diagram (2.4)

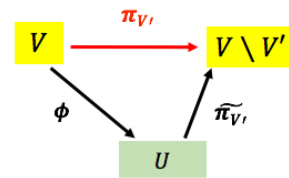


Diagram (2.5)

Since  $(\pi_{V'})$  satisfies the universal property, in particular, the following two diagrams hold:

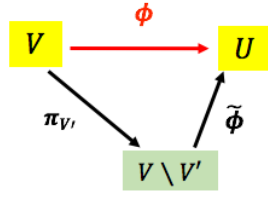


Diagram (2.6)

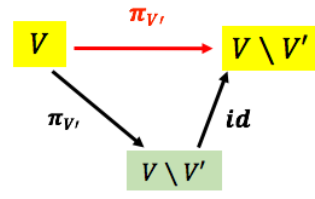


Diagram (2.7)

Then we claim that: Combining Diagram (2.5) and (2.6), we imply the diagram (2.8):

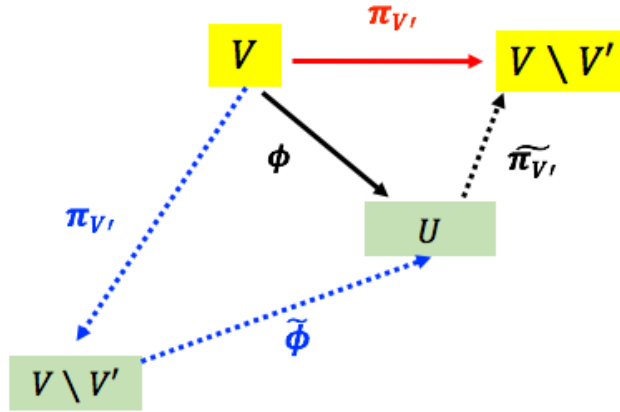


Diagram (2.8)

Graph Description: Note that this diagram commutes, i.e., the mapping starting from either the red line or the dash line gives the same result, i.e.,  $\pi_{V'} = \tilde{\pi}_{V'} \circ \tilde{\phi} \circ \pi_{V'}$ . Comparing Diagram (2.7) and Diagram (2.8), we have  $\tilde{\pi}_{V'} \circ \tilde{\phi} = id$ , by the **uniqueness** of the universal object.

Therefore,  $\tilde{\pi}_{V'} \circ \tilde{\phi} = id$  implies  $\tilde{\pi}_{V'}$  is surjective and  $\tilde{\phi}$  is injective.

Also, combining Diagram (2.6) and (2.5), we imply diagram (2.9):

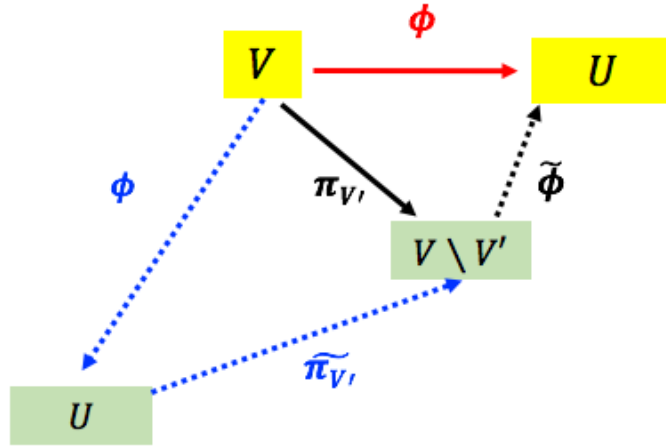


Diagram (2.9)

Graph Description: Note that this diagram commutes, i.e., the mapping starting from either the red line or the dash line gives the same result, i.e.,  $\phi = \tilde{\phi} \circ \pi_{V'} \circ \phi$ . Comparing Diagram (2.9) and Diagram (2.4), we have  $\tilde{\phi} \circ \pi_{V'} = id$ , by the **uniqueness** of the universal object

Therefore,  $\tilde{\phi} \circ \pi_{V'} = id$  implies  $\tilde{\phi}$  is surjective and  $\pi_{V'}$  is injective.

Therefore, both  $\tilde{\phi} : U \rightarrow V/V'$  and  $\pi_{V'} : V/V' \rightarrow U$  are bijective, i.e.,  $U \cong V/V'$ . The proof is complete.

■

#### 4.4.1. Dual Space

**Definition 4.8** Let  $V$  be a vector space over a field  $\mathbb{F}$ . The **dual vector space**  $V^*$  is defined as

$$\begin{aligned} V^* &= \text{Hom}_{\mathbb{F}}(V, \mathbb{F}) \\ &= \{f : V \rightarrow \mathbb{F} \mid f \text{ is a linear transformation}\} \end{aligned}$$

■

- **Example 4.3** 1. Consider  $V = \mathbb{R}^n$  and define  $\phi_i : V \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  as the  $i$ -th component of input:

$$\phi_i \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ \vdots \\ x_n \end{pmatrix} = x_i,$$

Then we imply  $\phi_i \in V^*$ . On the contrary,  $\phi_i^2 \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ \vdots \\ x_n \end{pmatrix} = x_i^2$  is not in  $V^*$

2. Consider  $V = \mathbb{F}[x]$  and define  $\phi : V \rightarrow \mathbb{F}$  as:

$$\phi(p(x)) = p(1),$$

It's clear that  $\phi \in V^*$ :

$$\begin{aligned} \phi(ap(x) + bq(x)) &= ap(1) + bq(1) \\ &= a\phi(p(x)) + b\phi(q(x)) \end{aligned}$$

3. Also,  $\psi : V \rightarrow \mathbb{F}$  by  $\psi(p(x)) = \int_0^1 p(x) dx$  is in  $V^*$ .  
 4. Also, for  $V = M_{n \times n}(\mathbb{F})$ , the mapping  $\text{tr} : V \rightarrow \mathbb{F}$  by  $\text{tr}(M) = \sum_{i=1}^n M_{ii}$  is in  $V^*$ . However, the  $\det : V \rightarrow \mathbb{F}$  is not in  $V^*$

**Definition 4.9** Let  $V$  be a vector space, with basis  $B = \{v_i \mid i \in I\}$  ( $I$  can be finite or countable, or uncountable). Define

$$B^* = \{f_i : V \rightarrow \mathbb{F} \mid i \in I\},$$

where  $f_i$ 's are defined on the basis  $B$ :

$$f_i(v_j) = \delta_{ij} = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } i = j \\ 0, & \text{if } i \neq j \end{cases}$$

Then we extend  $f_i$ 's linearly, i.e., for  $\sum_{j=1}^N \alpha_j v_j \in V$ ,

$$f_i\left(\sum_{j=1}^N \alpha_j v_j\right) = \sum_{j=1}^N \alpha_j f_i(v_j).$$

It's clear that  $f_i \in V^*$  is well-defined. ■

Our question is that whether the  $B^*$  can be the basis of  $V^*$ ?

# Chapter 5

## Week5

### 5.1. Monday for MAT3040

Reviewing.

- Dual space: the set of linear transformations from  $V$  to  $\mathbb{F}$ , denoted as  $\text{Hom}(V, \mathbb{F})$ .
- Suppose  $B = \{\mathbf{v}_i \mid i \in I\}$  is the basis of  $V$ , define  $B^* = \{f_i \mid i \in I\}$  by

$$f_i(\mathbf{v}_j) = \delta_{ij} = \begin{cases} 1, & i = j \\ 0, & i \neq j \end{cases}$$

Actually, the above recipe uniquely defines a linear transformation  $f_i : V \rightarrow \mathbb{F}$ :

For any  $\mathbf{v} \in V$ , it can be written as  $\mathbf{v} = \sum_{i \in I} \alpha_i \mathbf{v}_i$ , and therefore

$$f_i(\mathbf{v}) = f_i\left(\sum_{i \in I} \alpha_i \mathbf{v}_i\right) = \sum_{i \in I} \alpha_i f_i(\mathbf{v}_i).$$

■ **Example 5.1** Consider  $V = \mathbb{R}^n, B = \{\mathbf{e}_1, \dots, \mathbf{e}_n\}$ . Then we imply  $B^* = \{\phi_i\}_{i=1}^n$ , where  $\phi_i$  is the mapping  $V \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  defined by

$$\phi_i \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ \vdots \\ x_n \end{pmatrix} = \phi(x_1 \mathbf{e}_1 + \dots + x_n \mathbf{e}_n) = \sum_{j=1}^n x_j \phi_i(\mathbf{e}_j) = x_i$$

### 5.1.1. Remarks on Dual Space

- Proposition 5.1**
1.  $B^*$  is always linearly independent, i.e., any finite subset of  $B^*$  is linearly independent.
  2. If  $V$  has finite dimension, then  $B^*$  is a basis of  $V^*$ .

*Proof.* 1. Suppose that

$$\alpha_1 f_{i_1} + \alpha_2 f_{i_2} + \cdots + \alpha_k f_{i_k} = \mathbf{0}_{V^*}.$$

In particular, let the input of these linear transformations be  $\mathbf{v}_{i_1}$ , we imply

$$\begin{aligned} \alpha_1 f_{i_1}(\mathbf{v}_{i_1}) + \alpha_2 f_{i_2}(\mathbf{v}_{i_1}) + \cdots + \alpha_k f_{i_k}(\mathbf{v}_{i_1}) &= \mathbf{0}(\mathbf{v}_{i_1}) \equiv \mathbf{0} \\ &= \alpha_1 \cdot 1 + \cdots + 0 \\ &= \alpha_1 \end{aligned}$$

Applying the same trick, one can show that  $\alpha_2 = \cdots = \alpha_k = 0$ . Therefore,  $\{f_{i_1}, \dots, f_{i_k}\}$  is linearly independent.

2. Suppose that  $B = \{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_n\}$  and  $B^* = \{f_1, \dots, f_n\}$ . For any  $f \in V^*$ , construct the linear transformation

$$g := \sum_{i=1}^n f(\mathbf{v}_i) \cdot f_i \in \text{span}\{B^*\}.$$

It follows that for  $j = 1, 2, \dots, n$ ,

$$g(\mathbf{v}_j) = \sum_{i=1}^n f(\mathbf{v}_i) \cdot f_i(\mathbf{v}_j) = f(\mathbf{v}_j).$$

It's clear that  $g(\mathbf{v}) = f(\mathbf{v})$  for all  $\mathbf{v} \in V$ , i.e.,  $f \equiv g \in \text{span}(B^*)$ . Therefore  $B^*$  spans  $V^*$ , i.e., forms a basis of  $V^*$ .

■

**Corollary 5.1** If  $\dim(V) = n$ , then  $\dim(V^*) = n$ .

*Proof.* It's easy to show the mapping defined as

$$V \rightarrow V^*$$

with  $v_i \mapsto f_i$

is an isomorphism from  $V \rightarrow V^*$ . Note that this constructed isomorphism depends on the choice of basis  $B$  in  $V$ . (We say this is not a **natural isomorphism**.) ■

- Ⓡ The part 2 for proposition (5.1) does not hold for  $V$  with infinite dimension. The reason is that the spanning set is defined with **finite** linear combinations. Check the example below for a counter-example.

■ **Example 5.2** Suppose that  $V = \mathbb{F}[x]$ , and  $B^* = \{1, x, x^2, \dots\}$  forms a basis of  $V$ . We imply that  $B^* = \{\phi_0, \phi_1, \phi_2, \dots\}$ , where  $\phi_i$  is the mapping defined as

$$\phi_i(x^j) = \begin{cases} 1, & i = j \\ 0, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

Consider a special element  $\phi \in V^*$  with  $f(p(x)) = p(1)$ :

$$\phi(1) = 1, \quad \phi(x) = 1, \quad \phi(x^2) = 1, \quad \dots \quad \phi(x^n) = 1, \quad \forall n \in \mathbb{N}.$$

If following the proof in proposition (5.1), we expect that

$$g := \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \phi(x^n) \phi_n = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \phi_n \in \text{span}\{B^*\},$$

which is a contradiction, since  $\text{span}\{B^*\}$  consists of finite sum of  $\phi_i$ 's only. ■

- Ⓡ Therefore, if  $V$  is not finite-dimensional, we can say the cardinality of  $V$  is strictly less than the cardinality of  $V^*$ .

Any subspace of a given vector space has some gap. Now we want to describe this gap formally from the perspective of the dual space.



## 5.1.2. Annihilators

**Definition 5.1** Let  $V$  be a vector space,  $S \subseteq V$  be a subset. The **annihilator** of  $S$  is defined as

$$\text{Ann}(S) = \{f \in V^* \mid f(s) = 0, \forall s \in S\}$$

■ **Example 5.3** Consider  $V = \mathbb{R}^4$ ,  $B = \{e_1, \dots, e_4\}$ . Let  $B^* = \{f_1, \dots, f_4\}$ ,  $S = \{e_3, e_4\}$ .

- Then  $f_1 \in \text{Ann}(S)$ , since

$$f_1(e_3) = 0, \quad f_1(e_4) = 0$$

Indeed, any  $a \cdot f_1 + b \cdot f_2 \in V^*$  is in  $\text{Ann}(S)$ . ■

**Proposition 5.2**

1. The set  $\text{Ann}(S)$  is a vector subspace of  $V^*$
2. The mapping  $\text{Ann}(\cdot)$  is **inclusion-reversing**, i.e., if  $W_1 \subseteq W_2 \subseteq V$ , then

$$\text{Ann}(W_1) \supseteq \text{Ann}(W_2)$$

3. The mapping  $\text{Ann}(\cdot)$  is **idempotent**, i.e.,  $\text{Ann}(S) = \text{Ann}(\text{span}(S))$ .
4. If  $V$  has finite dimension, and  $W \leq V$ , then  $\text{Ann}(W)$  fills in the gap, i.e.,

$$\dim(W) + \dim(\text{Ann}(W)) = \dim(V)$$

*Proof.* 1. Suppose that  $f, g \in \text{Ann}(S)$ , i.e.,  $f(s) = g(s) = 0, \forall s \in S$ . It's clear that  $(af + bg) \in \text{Ann}(S)$ .

2. Suppose that  $f \in \text{Ann}(W_2)$ , we imply  $f(w) = 0$  for any  $w \in W_2$ . Therefore,  $f(w_1) = 0$  for any  $w_1 \in W_1 \subseteq W_2$ , i.e.,  $f \in \text{Ann}(W_1)$ .

3. Note that  $S \subseteq \text{span}(S)$ . Therefore we imply  $\text{Ann}(S) \supseteq \text{Ann}(\text{span}(S))$  from part (b). It suffices to show  $\text{Ann}(S) \subseteq \text{Ann}(\text{span}(S))$ :

For any  $f \in \text{Ann}(S)$  and any  $\sum_{i=1}^n k_i \mathbf{s}_i \in \text{span}(S)$ , we imply

$$\begin{aligned} f\left(\sum_{i=1}^n k_i \mathbf{s}_i\right) &= \sum_{i=1}^n k_i f(\mathbf{s}_i) \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^n k_i \cdot 0 \\ &= 0, \end{aligned}$$

i.e.,  $f \in \text{Ann}(\text{span}(S))$ .

4. Let  $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_k\}$  be a basis of  $W$ . By basis extension, we construct a basis of  $V$ :

$$B = \{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_k, \mathbf{v}_{k+1}, \dots, \mathbf{v}_n\}.$$

Let  $B^* = \{f_1, \dots, f_k, f_{k+1}, \dots, f_n\}$  be a basis of  $V^*$ . We claim that  $\{f_{k+1}, \dots, f_n\}$  is a basis of  $\text{Ann}(W)$ :

- Firstly,  $f_j$ 's are the elements in  $\text{Ann}(W)$  for  $j = k+1, \dots, n$ , since for any  $\mathbf{w} = \sum_{i=1}^k \alpha_i(\mathbf{v}_i) \in W$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} f_j(\mathbf{w}) &= \sum_{i=1}^k \alpha_i f_j(\mathbf{v}_i) \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^k \alpha_i \cdot 0 \\ &= 0, \quad j = k+1, k+2, \dots, n \end{aligned}$$

- Secondly, the set  $\{f_{k+1}, \dots, f_n\}$  is linearly independent, since the set  $B^* = \{f_1, \dots, f_n\}$  is linearly independent.

- Thirdly,  $\{f_{k+1}, \dots, f_n\}$  spans  $\text{Ann}(W)$ : for any  $g \in \text{Ann}(W) \subseteq V^*$ , it can be

expressed as  $g = \sum_{i=1}^n \beta_i f_i$ . It follows that

$$\begin{aligned} g(\mathbf{v}_1) &= \sum_{i=1}^n \beta_i f_i(\mathbf{v}_1) = 0 \implies \beta_1 = 0 \\ &\vdots \\ g(\mathbf{v}_k) &= \sum_{i=1}^n \beta_i f_i(\mathbf{v}_k) = 0 \implies \beta_k = 0 \end{aligned}$$

Substituting  $\beta_1 = \dots = \beta_k = 0$  into  $g = \sum_{i=1}^n \beta_i f_i$ , we imply

$$g = \beta_{k+1} f_{k+1} + \dots + \beta_n f_n \in \text{span}\{f_{k+1}, \dots, f_n\}.$$

Therefore,  $\{f_{k+1}, \dots, f_n\}$  forms a basis for  $\text{Ann}(W)$ , i.e.,  $\dim(\text{Ann}(W)) = n - k$ . ■

**R** Let  $W \leq V$ , where  $V$  has finite dimension, recall that we have obtained two relations below:

$$\dim(\text{Ann}(W)) = \dim(V) - \dim(W)$$

$$\dim((V/W)^*) = \dim(V/W) = \dim(V) - \dim(W)$$

Therefore,  $\dim((V/W)^*) = \dim(\text{Ann}(W))$ , i.e.,

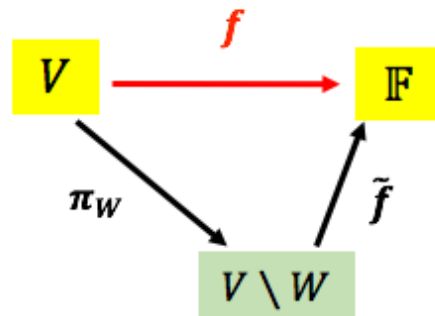
$$(V/W)^* \cong \text{Ann}(W).$$

The question is that can we construct an isomorphism explicitly? We claim that the mapping defined below is an isomorphism:

$$\begin{aligned} &\text{Ann}(W) \rightarrow (V/W)^* \\ \text{with } &f \mapsto \tilde{f}, \end{aligned}$$

where  $\tilde{f}: V/W \rightarrow \mathbb{F}$  is constructed from the **universal property I**, i.e., given

the mapping  $f \in \text{Ann}(W)$ , since  $W \leq \ker(f)$ , there exists  $\tilde{f} : V/W \rightarrow \mathbb{F}$  such that the diagram below commutes:



i.e.,  $\tilde{f}(\mathbf{v} + W) = f(\mathbf{v})$ .

## 5.4. Wednesday for MAT3040

There will be a quiz on next Monday.

Scope : From Week 1 up to (including) the definition of  $B^*$ .

### Reviewing.

1. If  $V$  is finite dimensional, and  $B$  a basis of  $V$ , then  $B^*$  is a basis of the dual space  $V^*$ .
2. Define the Annihilator  $\text{Ann}(S) \leq V^*$ :

$$\text{Ann}(S) = \{f \in V^* \mid f(s) = 0, \forall s \in S\}$$

3. If  $V$  is finite dimensional, and  $W \leq V$ , then  $\text{Ann}(W)$  fills the gap, i.e.,

$$\dim(\text{Ann}(W)) = \dim(V) - \dim(W)$$

4. Define a map

$$\begin{aligned} \Phi : \text{Ann}(W) &\rightarrow (V/W)^* \\ f &\mapsto \tilde{f} \end{aligned}$$

where  $\tilde{f}$  is defined such that the diagram (5.1) below commutes

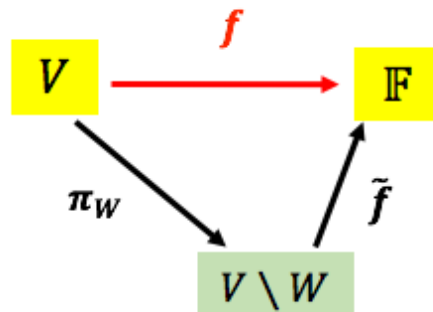


Figure 5.1: Construction of  $\tilde{f}$

Or equivalently,  $\tilde{f} : V/W \rightarrow \mathbb{F}$  is such that  $\tilde{f}(\mathbf{v} + W) = f(\mathbf{v})$ .

### 5.4.1. Adjoint Map

The natural question is that whether  $\Phi$  is the isomorphism between  $\text{Ann}(W)$  and  $(V/W)^*$ :

**Proposition 5.4**  $\Phi$  is a linear transformation, i.e.,

$$\Phi(af + bg) = a \cdot \Phi(f) + b \cdot \Phi(g).$$

*Proof.* It suffices to show that

$$\overline{af + bg} = a\overline{f} + b\overline{g}$$

■

Therefore, we need to answer whether  $\Phi$  a bijective map. We will show this conjecture at the end of this lecture. The definition of  $\Phi$  is **natural**, i.e., we do not need to specify any basis to define this  $\Phi$ . However, as studied in Monday, the constructed isomorphism  $V \rightarrow V^*$  with  $v_i \mapsto f_i$  is not natural.

**Definition 5.3** [Adjoint Map] Let  $T : V \rightarrow W$  be a linear transformation. Define the **adjoint** of  $T$  by

$$T^* : W^* \rightarrow V^*$$

such that for any  $f \in W^*$ ,

$$[T^*(f)](\mathbf{v}) := f(T(\mathbf{v})), \quad \forall \mathbf{v} \in V.$$

■



1. In other words,  $T^*(f) = f \circ T$ , i.e., a linear transformation from  $V$  to  $\mathbb{F}$ , i.e., belongs to  $V^*$ .
2. Moreover, the mapping  $T^*$  itself is a linear transformation: For  $f, g \in W^*$ ,

and  $\forall \mathbf{v} \in V$ ,

$$\begin{aligned}
[T^*(af + bg)](\mathbf{v}) &= (af + bg)[T(\mathbf{v})] \\
&= af(T(\mathbf{v})) + bg(T(\mathbf{v})) && \text{definition of } W^* \text{ as a vector space} \\
&= a[T^*(f)](\mathbf{v}) + b[T^*(g)](\mathbf{v}) \\
&= [aT^*(f) + bT^*(g)](\mathbf{v}) && \text{definition of } V^* \text{ as a vector space}
\end{aligned}$$

**Proposition 5.5** Let  $T : V \rightarrow W$  be a linear transformation.

1. If  $T$  is **injective**, then  $T^*$  is **surjective**.
2. If  $T$  is **surjective**, then  $T^*$  is **injective**.

This statement is quite intuitive, since  $T^*$  reverses the dual of output into the dual of input:

$$T : V \rightarrow W$$

$$T^* : W^* \rightarrow V^*$$

*Proof.* We only give a proof of (2), i.e., suffices to show  $\ker(T) = \{\mathbf{0}\}$ .

Consider any  $g \in W^*$  such that  $T^*(g) = \mathbf{0}_{V^*}$ . It follows that

$$[T^*(g)](\mathbf{v}) = \mathbf{0}_{V^*}(\mathbf{v}), \quad \forall \mathbf{v} \in V. \iff g(T(\mathbf{v})) = \mathbf{0}, \quad \forall \mathbf{v} \in V. \quad (5.4)$$

To show  $g = \mathbf{0}_{W^*}$ , it suffices to show  $g(\mathbf{w}) = \mathbf{0}$  for  $\forall \mathbf{w} \in W$ . For all  $\mathbf{w} \in W$ , by the surjectivity of  $T$ , there exists  $\mathbf{v}' \in V$  such that

$$\mathbf{w} = T(\mathbf{v}').$$

By substituting  $\mathbf{w}$  with  $T(\mathbf{v}')$  and (5.4), we imply

$$g(\mathbf{w}) = g(T(\mathbf{v}')) = \mathbf{0}.$$

The proof is complete. ■

**Proposition 5.6** Let  $T : V \rightarrow W$  be a linear transformation, and  $\mathcal{A} = \{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_n\}, \mathcal{B} = \{\mathbf{w}_1, \dots, \mathbf{w}_m\}$  be the bases of  $V$  and  $W$ , respectively. Let  $\mathcal{A}^* = \{f_1, \dots, f_n\}, \mathcal{B}^* = \{g_1, \dots, g_m\}$

be bases of dual spaces  $V^*$  and  $W^*$ , respectively. Then  $T^* : W^* \rightarrow V^*$  admits a matrix representation

$$(T^*)_{\mathcal{A}^* \mathcal{B}^*} = \text{transpose}((T)_{\mathcal{B} \mathcal{A}})$$

where  $(T^*)_{\mathcal{A}^* \mathcal{B}^*} \in \mathbb{F}^{n \times m}$  and  $(T)_{\mathcal{B} \mathcal{A}} \in \mathbb{F}^{m \times n}$

*Proof.* Let  $(T)_{\mathcal{B} \mathcal{A}} = (\alpha_{ij})$  and  $(T^*)_{\mathcal{A}^* \mathcal{B}^*} = (\beta_{ij})$ . By definition of matrix representation,

$$T(\mathbf{v}_j) = \sum_{i=1}^m \alpha_{ij} \mathbf{w}_i, \quad T^*(g_i) = \sum_{k=1}^n \beta_{ki} f_k \in V^*$$

As a result,

$$\begin{aligned} [T^*(g_i)](\mathbf{v}_j) &= g_i(T(\mathbf{v}_j)) \\ &= g_i\left(\sum_{\ell=1}^m \alpha_{\ell j} \mathbf{w}_\ell\right) \\ &= \sum_{\ell=1}^m \alpha_{\ell j} g_i(\mathbf{w}_\ell) \\ &= \alpha_{ij} \end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} [T^*(g_i)](\mathbf{v}_j) &= \left(\sum_{k=1}^n \beta_{ki} f_k\right)(\mathbf{v}_j) \\ &= \sum_{k=1}^n \beta_{ki} f_k(\mathbf{v}_j) \\ &= \beta_{ji} \end{aligned}$$

Therefore,  $\beta_{ji} = \alpha_{ij}$ . The proof is complete. ■

## 5.4.2. Relationship between Annihilator and dual of quotient spaces



■ **Example 5.5** Consider the canonical projection mapping  $\pi_W : V \rightarrow V/W$  with its **adjoint** mapping:

$$(\pi_W)^* : (V/W)^* \rightarrow V^*$$

The understanding of  $(\pi_W)^*$  is as follows:

1. Take  $h \in (V/W)^*$  and study  $(\pi_W)^*(h) \in V^*$
2. Take  $\mathbf{v} \in V$  and understand

$$[(\pi_W)^*(h)](\mathbf{v}) = h(\pi_W(\mathbf{v})) = h(\mathbf{v} + W)$$

(a) In particular, for all  $\mathbf{w} \in W \leq V$ , we have

$$[(\pi_W)^*(h)](\mathbf{w}) = h(\mathbf{w} + W) = h(\mathbf{0}_{V/W}) = \mathbf{0}_{\mathbb{F}}$$

Therefore,

$$(\pi_W)^*(h) \in \text{Ann}(W).$$

i.e.,  $(\pi_W)^*$  is a mapping from  $(V/W)^*$  to  $\text{Ann}(W)$ .

(b) By proposition (5.5),  $\pi_W$  is surjective implies  $(\pi_W)^*$  is injective.

Combining (a) and (b), it's clear that (i.e., left as homework problem)

$$\Phi \circ \pi_W^* = \text{id}_{(V/W)^*} \text{ and } \pi_W^* \circ \Phi = \text{id}_{\text{Ann}(W)}$$

This relationship implies  $\Phi$  is an isomorphism. ■

# Chapter 6

## Week6

### 6.1. Monday for MAT3040

#### 6.1.1. Polynomials

We recall some useful properties of polynomial before studying eigenvalues/eigenvectors.

**Definition 6.1** [Polynomial]

1. A polynomial over  $\mathbb{F}$  has the form

$$p(z) = a_m z^m + \cdots + a_1 z + a_0, \quad (a_m \neq 0).$$

Here  $a_m z^m$  is called the **leading term** of  $p(z)$ ;  $m$  is called the degree;  $a_m$  is called the **leading coefficient**;  $a_m, \dots, a_0$  are called the coefficients of this polynomial.

2. A polynomial over  $\mathbb{F}$  is monic if its leading coefficient is  $1_{\mathbb{F}}$ .
3. A polynomial  $p(z) \in \mathbb{F}[z]$  is **irreducible** if for any  $a(z), b(z) \in \mathbb{F}[z]$ ,

$$p(z) = a(z)b(z) \implies \text{either } a(z) \text{ or } b(z) \text{ is a constant polynomial.}$$

Otherwise  $p(z)$  is **reducible**.

■ **Example 6.1** For example, the polynomial  $p(x) = x^2 + 1$  is irreducible over  $\mathbb{R}$ ; but  $p(x) = (x - i)(x + i)$  is **reducible** over  $\mathbb{C}$ . ■

**Theorem 6.1 — Division Theorem.** For all  $p, q \in \mathbb{F}[z]$  such that  $p \neq 0$ , there exists unique  $s, r \in \mathbb{F}[z]$  satisfying  $\deg(r) < \deg(p)$ , such that

$$p(z) = s(z) \cdot q(z) + r(z).$$

Here  $r(z)$  is called the **remainder**.

■ **Example 6.2** Given  $p(x) = x^4 + 1$  and  $q(x) = x^2 + 1$ , the junior school knowledge tells us that uniquely

$$x^4 + 1 = (x^2 - 1)(x^2 + 1) + 2.$$

**Theorem 6.2 — Root Theorem.** For  $p(x) \in \mathbb{F}[x]$ , and  $\lambda \in \mathbb{F}$ ,  $x - \lambda$  divides  $p$  if and only if  $p(\lambda) = 0$ .

*Proof.* 1. If  $(x - \lambda)$  divides  $p$ , then  $p = (x - \lambda)q$  for some  $q \in \mathbb{F}[x]$ . Thus clearly  $p(\lambda) = 0$ .  
 2. For the other direction, suppose that  $p(\lambda) = 0$ . By division theorem, there exists  $s, r \in \mathbb{F}[x]$  such that

$$p = (x - \lambda)s + r \quad \text{with } \deg(r) < \deg(x - \lambda) = 1. \quad (6.1)$$

Therefore, the polynomial  $r$  must be constant.

Substituting  $\lambda$  into  $x$  both sides in (6.1), we have

$$0 = p(\lambda) = 0 \cdot s + r \implies r = 0.$$

Therefore,  $p = (x - \lambda) \cdot s$ , i.e.,  $(x - \lambda)$  divides  $p$ . ■

## 6.4. Wednesday for MAT3040

**Reviewing:** Root Theorem:  $p(\lambda) = 0$  iff  $(x - \lambda)$  divides  $p(x)$ .

**Corollary 6.2** A polynomial with degree  $n$  has at most  $n$  roots counting multiplicity.

For example, the polynomial  $(x - 3)^2$  has one root  $x = 3$  with multiplicity 2. When counting multiplicity, we say the polynomial  $(x - 3)^2$  has two roots.

**Definition 6.5** [Algebraically Closed] A field  $\mathbb{F}$  is called **algebraically closed** if every non-constant polynomial  $p(x) \in \mathbb{F}[x]$  has a root  $\lambda \in \mathbb{F}$ . ■

**Theorem 6.5 — Fundamental Theorem of Algebra.** The set of complex numbers  $\mathbb{C}$  is algebraically closed.

*Proof.* One way is by complex analysis; Another way is by the topology on  $\mathbb{C} \setminus \{0\}$ . ■

**R** By induction, we can show that every polynomial with degree  $n$  on algebraically closed field  $\mathbb{F}$  has **exactly**  $n$  roots, counting multiplicity. Therefore, for any  $p(x)$  on algebraically closed field  $\mathbb{F}$ ,

$$p(x) = c(x - \lambda_1) \cdots (x - \lambda_n) \quad (6.3)$$

for  $c, \lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_n \in \mathbb{F}$ .

The polynomials on general field  $\mathbb{F}$  may not necessarily be factorized as in (6.3), but still admit unique factorization property:

**Theorem 6.6 — Unique Factorization.** Every  $f(x) = a_n x^n + \cdots + a_0$  in  $\mathbb{F}[x]$  can be factorized as

$$f(x) = a_n [p_1(x)]^{e_1} \cdots [p_k(x)]^{e_k}$$

where  $p_i$ 's are **monic, irreducible, distinct**. Furthermore, this expression is unique up to the permutation of factors.

**Definition 6.6** [Factor] If  $p(x) = q(x)s(x)$  with  $p, q, s \in \mathbb{F}[x]$ , then we say

- $p(x)$  is **divisible** by  $s(x)$ ;
- $s(x)$  is a **factor** of  $p(x)$ ;
- $s(x) | p(x)$
- $s(x)$  **divides**  $p(x)$
- $p(x)$  is **multiple** of  $s(x)$

**Definition 6.7** [Common Factor]

1. The polynomial  $g(x)$  is said to be a **common factor** of  $f_1, \dots, f_k \in \mathbb{F}[x]$  if

$$g | f_i, i = 1, \dots, k$$

2. The polynomial  $g(x)$  is said to be a **greatest common divisor** of  $f_1, \dots, f_k$  if
  - $g$  is **monic**.
  - $g$  is common factor of  $f_1, \dots, f_k$
  - $g$  is of largest possible (maximal) degree.



- $\gcd(f_1, \dots, f_k) = \gcd(\gcd(f_1, f_2), f_3, \dots, f_k) = \gcd(\gcd(f_1, f_2, f_3), \dots, f_k)$
- $\gcd(f_1, \dots, f_k)$  is unique.
- If  $\gcd(f_1, \dots, f_k) = 1$ , we say  $f_1, \dots, f_k$  is **relatively prime**
- Polynomials  $f_1, \dots, f_k$  are relatively prime does not necessarily mean  $\gcd(f_i, f_j) = 1$  for any  $i \neq j$ .

Counter-example: Let  $a_1, \dots, a_n$  distinct irreducible polynomials, and

$$f_i(x) = a_1(x) \cdots \hat{a}_i(x) \cdots a_n(x) := a_1 \cdots a_{i-1} a_{i+1} \cdots a_n,$$

then  $\gcd(f_1, \dots, f_n) = 1$ , but  $\gcd(f_i, f_j) = a_1 \cdots \hat{a}_i \cdots \hat{a}_j \cdots a_n$ , which does not necessarily equal to 1.

■ **Example 6.6** The  $\gcd(f_1, f_2)$  is easy to compute for factorized polynomials. For example, let  $f_1(x) = (x^2 + x + 1)^3(x - 3)^2x^4$  and  $f_2(x) = (x^2 + 1)(x - 3)^4x^2$  in  $\mathbb{R}[x]$ , then

$$\gcd(f_1, f_2) = (x - 3)^2x^2$$

The question is how to find  $\gcd(f_1, f_2)$  for given un-factorized polynomials?

**Theorem 6.7 — Bezout.** Let  $g = \gcd(f_1, f_2)$ , then there exists  $r_1, r_2 \in \mathbb{F}[x]$  such that

$$g(x) = r_1(x)f_1(x) + r_2(x)f_2(x)$$

More generally,  $g = \gcd(f_1, \dots, f_k)$  implies there exists  $r_1, \dots, r_k$  such that

$$g = r_1f_1 + \cdots + r_kf_k$$

The derivation of  $r_i$ 's is by applying **Euclidean algorithm**. For example, given  $x^3 + 6x + 7$  and  $x^2 + 3x + 2$ , we imply

$$x^3 + 6x + 7 - (x - 3)(x^2 + 3x + 2) = 13x + 13$$

and

$$x^2 + 3x + 2 - \frac{x+2}{13}(13x + 13) = 0$$

Therefore,  $\gcd(x^3 + 6x + 7, x^2 + 3x + 2) = \gcd(x^2 + 3x + 2, 13x + 13) = x + 2$ .

## 6.4.1. Eigenvalues & Eigenvectors

**Definition 6.8** [Eigenvalues] Let  $T : V \rightarrow V$  be a linear operator.

1. We say  $\mathbf{v} \in V \setminus \{\mathbf{0}\}$  is an eigenvector of  $T$  with eigenvalue  $\lambda$  if  $T(\mathbf{v}) = \lambda\mathbf{v}$ ;
2. Or equivalently,  $\mathbf{v} \in \ker(T - \lambda I)$ , the  $\lambda$ -eigenspace of  $T$ . Here the mapping  $I : V \rightarrow V$  denotes identity map, i.e.,  $I(\mathbf{v}) = \mathbf{v}, \forall \mathbf{v} \in V$ .

**Definition 6.9** A vector  $\mathbf{v} \in V \setminus \{\mathbf{0}\}$  is a **generalized eigenvector** of  $T$  with **generalized eigenvalue**  $\lambda$  if  $\mathbf{v} \in \ker((T - \lambda I)^k)$  for some  $k \in \mathbb{N}^+$ .

Note that an eigenvector is a generalized eigenvector of  $T$ ; while the converse does not necessarily hold.

■ **Example 6.7** Consider the linear transformation  $A : \mathbb{R}^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^2$  with

$$\begin{aligned} A : \quad & \mathbb{R}^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^2 \\ \text{with} \quad & \mathbf{x} \rightarrow \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x} \\ \text{where} \quad & \mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

1. Note that  $[1, 0]^T$  is an eigenvector with eigenvalue 1, since

$$A \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

2. However,  $[0, 1]^T$  is not an eigenvector, since

$$A \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Note that

$$(A - I)^2 = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \quad (A - I)^3 = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

and therefore

$$\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \in \ker(A - I)^2,$$

i.e., a generalized eigenvector with generalized eigenvalue 1. ■

■ **Example 6.8** Consider  $V = C^\infty(\mathbb{R})$ , which is a set of all infinitely differentiable functions.

Define the linear operator  $T : V \rightarrow V$  as  $T(f) = f''$ . Then the  $(-1)$ -eigenspace of  $T$  has  $f \in V$  satisfying

$$f'' = -f$$

From ODE course, we imply  $\{\sin x, \cos x\}$  forms a basis of  $(-1)$ -eigenspace. ■

**Assumption.** From now on, we assume  $V$  has finite dimension by default.

**Definition 6.10** [Determinant] Let  $T : V \rightarrow V$  be a linear operator. The **determinant** of  $T$  is given by

$$\det(T) = \det((T)_{\mathcal{A},\mathcal{A}})$$

where  $\mathcal{A}$  is some basis of  $V$ . ■

Ⓡ Assume we have complete knowledge about  $\det(M)$  for matrices for now. The determinant is well-defined, i.e., independent of the choice of basis  $\mathcal{A}$ . For another basis  $\mathcal{B}$ , we imply

$$\det(T_{\mathcal{B},\mathcal{B}}) = \det(C_{\mathcal{B},\mathcal{A}} T_{\mathcal{A},\mathcal{A}} C_{\mathcal{A},\mathcal{B}}) = \det(C_{\mathcal{B},\mathcal{A}}) \det(T_{\mathcal{A},\mathcal{A}}) \det(C_{\mathcal{A},\mathcal{B}}) = \det(T_{\mathcal{A},\mathcal{A}})$$



**Definition 6.11** [characteristic polynomial] The **characteristic polynomial**  $\chi_T(x)$  of  $T : V \rightarrow V$  is defined as

$$\chi_T(x) = \det((T)_{\mathcal{A},\mathcal{A}} - xI)$$

for any basis  $\mathcal{A}$  ■

In the next few lectures, we will study

- Cayley-Hamilton Theorem
- Jordan Canonical Form

These theorems can be stated using matrices, and they both hold up to change of basis. We have a unified statement of these theorems using vector space rather than  $\mathbb{R}^n$ .



# Chapter 7

## Week7

### 7.1. Monday for MAT3040

**Reviewing.** Define the characteristic polynomial for an linear operator  $T$ :

$$\chi_T(x) = \det((T)_{\mathcal{A},\mathcal{A}} - xI)$$

We will use the notation “ $I/I$ ” in two different occasions:

1.  $I$  denotes the identity transformation from  $V$  to  $V$  with  $I(\mathbf{v}) = \mathbf{v}, \forall \mathbf{v} \in V$
2.  $I$  denotes the identity matrix  $(I)_{\mathcal{A},\mathcal{A}}$ , defined based on any basis  $\mathcal{A}$ .

#### 7.1.1. Minimal Polynomial

**Definition 7.1** [Linear Operator Induced From Polynomial] Let  $f(x) := a_m x^m + \cdots + a_0$  be a polynomial in  $\mathbb{F}[x]$ , and  $T : V \rightarrow V$  be a linear operator. Then the mapping

$$f(T) = a_m T^m + \cdots + a_1 T + a_0 I : V \rightarrow V,$$

is called a linear operator induced from the polynomial  $f(x)$ . ■



1. The composition of linear operators is not abelian, e.g., in general  $S \circ T = T \circ S$  does not hold. The reason follows similarly from the fact that square-matrix multiplication is not abelian in general.

2. However, we always have  $f(T)T = Tf(T)$ , where  $f(T)$  is a linear operator induced from the polynomial  $f(x)$ :

*Proof.* We can show that  $T^nT = TT^n, \forall n$  by induction. Suppose that  $f(x) = \sum_i a_i x^i$ , which follows that

$$f(T)T = \sum_i a_i T^i T = \sum_i a_i T T^i = T \sum_i a_i T^i = T f(T).$$

■

3. We can generalize the statement in (2) into the fact that the composition of linear operators induced from polynomials is abelian, i.e.,

$$f(T)g(T) = g(T)f(T)$$

for any polynomials  $f(x), g(x)$ .

**Definition 7.2** [Minimal Polynomial] Let  $T : V \rightarrow V$  be a linear operator. The **minimal polynomial**  $m_T(x)$  is a **nonzero monic polynomial** of least (minimal) degree such that

$$m_T(T) = \mathbf{0}_{V \rightarrow V}.$$

where  $\mathbf{0}_{V \rightarrow V}$  denotes the zero vector in  $\text{Hom}(V, V)$ . ■

■ **Example 7.1** 1. Let  $\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$ , then  $\mathbf{A}$  defines a linear operator:

$$A : \mathbb{F}^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{F}^2$$

$$\text{with } \mathbf{x} \mapsto \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}$$

Here  $\chi_A(x) = (x - 1)^2$  and  $\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{I} = \mathbf{0}$ , which gives  $m_A(x) = x - 1$ .

2. Let  $\mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$ , which implies

$$\chi_{\mathbf{B}}(x) = (x - 1)^2,$$

The question is that can we get the minimal polynomial with degree 1?

The answer is no, since  $\mathbf{B} - k\mathbf{I} = \begin{pmatrix} 1-k & 1 \\ 0 & 1-k \end{pmatrix} \neq \mathbf{0}$ .

In fact,  $m_{\mathbf{B}}(x) = (x - 1)^2$ , since

$$(\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{I})^2 = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}^2 = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Two questions naturally arises:

1. Does  $m_T(x)$  exist? If exists, is it unique?
2. What's the relationship between  $m_T(x)$  and  $\chi_T(x)$ ?

Regarding to the first question, the minimal polynomial  $m_T(x)$  may not exist, if  $V$  has infinite dimension:

■ **Example 7.2** Consider  $V = \mathbb{R}[x]$  and the mapping

$$T : V \rightarrow V$$

$$p(x) \mapsto \int_0^x p(t) dt$$

In particular,  $T(x^n) = \frac{1}{n+1}x^{n+1}$ . Suppose  $m_T(x)$  is with degree  $n$ , i.e.,

$$m_T(x) = x^n + \cdots + a_1x + a_0,$$

then

$$m_T(T) = T^n + \cdots + a_0I \text{ is a zero linear transformation}$$

It follows that

$$[m_T(T)](x) = \frac{1}{n!}x^n + a_{n-1}\frac{1}{(n-1)!}x^{n-1} + \cdots + a_1x + a_0 = 0_{\mathbb{F}},$$

which is a contradiction since the coefficients of  $x^k$  is nonzero on LHS for  $k = 1, \dots, n$ , but zero on the RHS. ■

**Proposition 7.1** The minimal polynomial  $m_T(x)$  always exists for  $\dim(V) = n < \infty$ .

*Proof.* It's clear that  $\{I, T, \dots, T^n, T^{n+1}, \dots, T^{n^2}\} \subseteq \text{Hom}(V, V)$ . Since  $\dim(\text{Hom}(V, V)) = n^2$ , we imply  $\{I, T, \dots, T^n, T^{n+1}, \dots, T^{n^2}\}$  is linearly dependent, i.e., there exists  $a_i$ 's that are not all zero such that

$$a_0I + a_1T + \cdots + a_{n^2}T^{n^2} = 0$$

i.e., there is a polynomial  $g(x)$  of degree less than  $n^2$  such that  $g(T) = 0$ .

The proof is complete. ■

**Proposition 7.2** The minimal polynomial  $m_T(x)$ , if exists, then it exists uniquely.

*Proof.* Suppose  $f_1, f_2$  are two distinct minimal polynomials with  $\deg(f_1) = \deg(f_2)$ . It follows that

- $\deg(f_1 - f_2) < \deg(f_1)$ .
- $f_1 - f_2 \neq 0$
- $(f_1 - f_2)(T) = f_1(T) - f_2(T) = 0_{V \rightarrow V}$

By scaling  $f_1 - f_2$ , there is a monic polynomial  $g$  with lower degree satisfying  $g(T) = 0$ , which contradicts the definition for minimal polynomial. ■

**Proposition 7.3** Suppose  $f(x) \in \mathbb{F}[x]$  satisfying  $f(T) = \mathbf{0}$ , then

$$m_T(x) \mid f(x).$$

*Proof.* It's clear that  $\deg(f) \geq \deg(m_T)$ . The division algorithm gives

$$f(x) = q(x)m_T(x) + r(x).$$

Therefore, for any  $\mathbf{v} \in V$

$$[r(T)](\mathbf{v}) = [f(T)](\mathbf{v}) - [q(T)m_T(T)](\mathbf{v}) = \mathbf{0}_V - q(T)\mathbf{0}_V = \mathbf{0}_V - \mathbf{0}_V = \mathbf{0}_V$$

Therefore,  $r(T) = \mathbf{0}_{V \rightarrow V}$ . By definition of minimal polynomial, we imply  $r(x) \equiv 0$ . ■

**Proposition 7.4** If  $\mathbf{A}, \mathbf{B} \in \mathbb{F}^{n \times n}$  are similar to each other, then  $m_A(x) = m_B(x)$ .

*Proof.* Suppose that  $\mathbf{B} = \mathbf{P}^{-1}\mathbf{A}\mathbf{P}$ , and that

$$m_A(x) = x^k + \cdots + a_1x + a_0, \quad m_B(x) = x^\ell + \cdots + b_0.$$

It follows that

$$\begin{aligned} m_A(\mathbf{B}) &= \mathbf{B}^k + \cdots + a_0\mathbf{I} \\ &= \mathbf{P}^{-1}\mathbf{A}^k\mathbf{P} + \cdots + a_0\mathbf{P}^{-1}\mathbf{P} \\ &= \mathbf{P}^{-1}(\mathbf{A}^k + \cdots + a_0\mathbf{I})\mathbf{P} \\ &= \mathbf{P}^{-1}(m_A(\mathbf{A}))\mathbf{P} \end{aligned}$$

Therefore,  $m_A(\mathbf{B}) = \mathbf{0}$  since  $m_A(\mathbf{A}) = \mathbf{0}$ . By proposition (7.3), we imply  $m_B(x) \mid m_A(x)$ .

Similarly,  $m_A(x) \mid m_B(x)$ . Since  $m_A(x)$  and  $m_B(x)$  are monic, we imply  $m_A(x) = m_B(x)$ . ■

**R** Proposition (7.4) claims that the minimal polynomial is **similarity-invariant**; actually, the characteristic polynomial is **similarity-invariant** as well.

**Assumption.** We will assume  $V$  has finite dimension from now on. Now we study the vanishing of a single vector  $\mathbf{v} \in V$ .

**Notation.** The  $m_T(x)$  is a nonzero monic polynomial of least degree such that

$$m_T(T) = \mathbf{0}_{V \rightarrow V}.$$

## 7.1.2. Minimal Polynomial of a vector

**Definition 7.3** [Minimal Polynomial of a vector] Similar to the minimal polynomial, we define the **minimal polynomial of a vector  $\mathbf{v}$  relative to  $T$** , say  $m_{T,\mathbf{v}}(x)$ , as the monic polynomial of least degree such that

$$m_{T,\mathbf{v}}(T)(\mathbf{v}) = 0$$

The existence of minimal polynomial of a vector is due to the existence of minimal polynomial; the uniqueness follows similarly as in proposition (7.2).

**Proposition 7.5** Let  $T : V \rightarrow V$  be a linear operator and  $\mathbf{v} \in V$ . The degree of the minimal polynomial of a vector is upper bounded by:

$$\deg(m_{T,\mathbf{v}}(x)) \leq \dim(V).$$

*Proof.* It's clear that  $\{\mathbf{v}, T\mathbf{v}, \dots, T^n\mathbf{v}\} \subseteq V$  and the proof follows similarly as in proposition (7.1). ■

Similar to the division property in proposition (7.3), we have the division property for minimal polynomial of a vector:

**Proposition 7.6** Suppose  $f(x) \in \mathbb{F}[x]$  satisfying  $f(T)(\mathbf{v}) = \mathbf{0}_V$ , then

$$m_{T,\mathbf{v}}(x) \mid f(x).$$

In particular,  $m_{T,\mathbf{v}} \mid m_T(x)$ .

*Proof.* The proof follows similarly as in proposition (7.3). ■

**Proposition 7.7** Suppose that  $m_{T,\mathbf{v}}(x) = f_1(x)f_2(x)$ , where  $f_1, f_2$  are both monic. Let  $\mathbf{w} = f_1(T)\mathbf{v}$ , then

$$m_{T,\mathbf{w}}(x) = f_2(x)$$



*Proof.* 1.

$$f_2(T)\mathbf{w} = f_2(T)f_1(T)\mathbf{v} = m_{T,\mathbf{v}}(T)\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{0}$$

By the proposition (7.3), we imply  $m_{T,\mathbf{w}}|f_2$ .

2. On the other hand,

$$\mathbf{0} = m_{T,\mathbf{w}}(T)(\mathbf{w}) = m_{T,\mathbf{w}}(T)f_1(T)\mathbf{v} = f_1(T)m_{T,\mathbf{w}}(T)\mathbf{v},$$

which implies that  $m_{T,\mathbf{v}}(x) | f_1(x)m_{T,\mathbf{w}}(x)$ , i.e.,

$$f_1 \cdot f_2 | f_1 \cdot m_{T,\mathbf{w}} \implies f_2 | m_{T,\mathbf{w}}.$$

The proof is complete. ■

## 7.4. Wednesday for MAT3040

### Reviewing.

- Given the polynomial  $f(x) \in \mathbb{F}[x]$ , we extend it into the linear operator  $f(T) : V \rightarrow V$ .
- The minimal polynomial  $m_T(x)$  is defined to be the polynomial with least degree such that

$$m_T(T) = \mathbf{0}_{V \rightarrow V},$$

i.e.,  $[m_T(T)]\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{0}_V, \forall \mathbf{v} \in V$ .

- The minimal polynomial of a vector  $\mathbf{v}$  relative to  $T$  is defined to be the polynomial  $m_{T,\mathbf{v}}(x)$  with the least degree such that

$$m_{T,\mathbf{v}}(T)(\mathbf{v}) = \mathbf{0}$$

- If  $f(T) = \mathbf{0}_{V \rightarrow V}$ , then we imply  $m_T(x) \mid f(x)$ . If  $[g(T)](\mathbf{w}) = \mathbf{0}_V$ , following the similar argument, we imply  $m_{T,\mathbf{w}}(x) \mid g(x)$ .
- In particular,  $m_T(T)\mathbf{w} = \mathbf{0}$ , which implies  $m_{T,\mathbf{w}}(x) \mid m_T(x)$ .

### 7.4.1. Cayley-Hamilton Theorem

Let's raise an motivative example first:

■ **Example 7.8** Consider the matrix and its induced mapping  $\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$ . It has the characteristic polynomial

$$\chi_A = (x - 1)(x - 2).$$

- Note that  $m_A(x)$  cannot be with degree one, since otherwise  $m_A(x) = x - k$  with

some  $k$ , and

$$m_A(\mathbf{A}) = \mathbf{A} - k\mathbf{I} = \begin{pmatrix} 1-k & 0 \\ 0 & 2-k \end{pmatrix} \neq \mathbf{0}, \quad \forall k,$$

which is a contradiction.

- However, one can verify that the  $m_A(x)$  is with degree 2:

$$m_A(x) = (x-1)(x-2).$$

- The minimal polynomial with eigenvectors can be with degree 1:

$$\mathbf{w} = [0, 1]^T \implies (\mathbf{A} - 2\mathbf{I})\mathbf{w} = \mathbf{0} \implies m_{A,\mathbf{w}}(x) = x - 2$$

- R** More generally, given an eigen-pair  $(\lambda, \mathbf{v})$ , the minimal polynomial of an  $\mathbf{v}$  has the explicit form

$$m_{T,\mathbf{v}}(x) = (x - \lambda) \implies (x - \lambda) \mid m_T(x)$$

Now we want to relate the characteristic polynomial  $m_T(x)$  with  $\chi_T(x)$ . Suppose that

$$\chi_T(x) = (x - \lambda_1)^{e_1} \cdots (x - \lambda_k)^{e_k} \in \mathbb{F}[x]. \quad (7.1)$$

Then we imply

- $\lambda_i$  is an eigenvalue of  $T$ ;
- $(x - \lambda_i) \mid m_T(x)$ ;

which implies that  $(x - \lambda_1) \cdots (x - \lambda_k) \mid m_T(x)$ .

Furthermore, (a). does  $m_T(x)$  possess other factors, e.g., does there exist  $\mu \neq \lambda_i, i = 1, \dots, k$  such that  $(x - \mu) \mid m_T(x)$ ? (b). does  $(x - \lambda_i)^{f_i} \mid m_T(x)$  when  $f_i > e_i$ ?

The answer is no for both question (a) and (b).

**Theorem 7.1 — Cayley-Hamilton.**  $m_T(x) \mid \chi_T(x)$ . In particular,  $\chi_T(T) = 0$ .

The nice equality in (7.1) does not necessarily hold. Sometimes  $\chi_T(x)$  cannot be factorized into linear factors in  $\mathbb{F}[x]$ , e.g.,  $A = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$  in  $\mathbb{R}$ .

However, for every  $f(x) \in \mathbb{F}[x]$ , we can extend  $\mathbb{F}$  into the algebraically closed set  $\overline{\mathbb{F}} \supseteq \mathbb{F}$  such that

$$f(x) = (x - \lambda_1)^{e_1} \cdots (x - \lambda_k)^{e_k}$$

where  $\lambda_i \in \overline{\mathbb{F}}$ .

For example, for  $f(x) = x^2 + 1 \in \mathbb{R}[x]$ , we can extend  $\mathbb{R}$  into  $\mathbb{C}$  to obtain

$$f(x) = (x + i)(x - i).$$

Therefore, the general proof outline for the Cayley-Hamilton Theorem is as follows:

- Consider the case where  $m_T(x), \chi_T(x)$  are both in  $\overline{\mathbb{F}}[x]$
- Show that  $m_T(x) \mid \chi_T(x)$  under  $\overline{\mathbb{F}}[x]$ .

Before the proof, let's study the invariant subspaces, which leads to the decomposition of characteristic polynomial:

**Assumption.** From now on, we assume that  $V$  is finite dimensional by default.

**Definition 7.12** [Invariant Subspace] An **invariant subspace** of a linear operator  $T : V \rightarrow V$  is a subspace  $W \leq V$  that is preserved by  $T$ , i.e.,  $T(W) \subseteq W$ . We also call  $W$  as  $T$ -invariant. ■

- Ⓡ If  $W \leq V$  is  $T$ -invariant, then the restriction of the linear operator  $T : V \rightarrow V$  induces the linear operator

$$T|_W : W \rightarrow W.$$

- **Example 7.9**
1.  $V$  itself is  $T$ -invariant.
  2. For the eigenvalue  $\lambda$ , the associated  $\lambda$ -eigenspace  $U = \ker(T - \lambda I)$  is  $T$ -invariant.
  3. More generally,  $U = \ker(g(T))$  is  $T$ -invariant for any polynomial  $g$ :  
If  $\mathbf{v} \in \ker(g(T))$ , i.e.,  $g(T)\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{0}$ , it suffices to show  $T(\mathbf{v}) \in \ker(g(T))$ :

$$\begin{aligned}
 g(T)[T(\mathbf{v})] &= (a_m T^m + \cdots + a_0 I)[T(\mathbf{v})] \\
 &= (a_m T \circ T^{m-1} + \cdots + a_1 T \circ T + a_0 T \circ I)(\mathbf{v}) \\
 &= T[g(T)\mathbf{v}] = T(\mathbf{0}) = \mathbf{0}
 \end{aligned}$$

4. For  $\mathbf{v} \in \ker(T - \lambda I)$ ,  $U = \text{span}\{\mathbf{v}\}$  is  $T$ -invariant.

**Proposition 7.10** Suppose that  $T : V \rightarrow V$  is a linear transformation and  $W \leq V$  is  $T$ -invariant, then we construct the subspace mapping and the recipe mapping

$$\begin{aligned}
 T|_W : W &\rightarrow W \\
 \text{with } \mathbf{w} &\mapsto T(\mathbf{w})
 \end{aligned} \tag{7.2a}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \tilde{T} : V/W &\rightarrow V/W \\
 \text{with } \mathbf{v} + W &\mapsto T(\mathbf{v}) + W
 \end{aligned} \tag{7.2b}$$

(Here the well-definedness of the recipe mapping  $\tilde{T}$  is shown in Hw2, Exercise 4),  
which leads to the decomposition of the characteristic polynomial:

$$\chi_T(x) = \chi_{T|_W}(x) \chi_{\tilde{T}}(x).$$

*Proof.* Suppose  $C = \{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_k\}$  is a basis of  $W$ , and extend it into the basis of  $V$ , denoted as

$$\mathcal{B} = \{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_k, \mathbf{v}_{k+1}, \dots, \mathbf{v}_n\}$$

Therefore,  $\overline{\mathcal{B}} = \{\mathbf{v}_{k+1} + W, \dots, \mathbf{v}_n + W\}$  is a basis of  $V/W$ . By Homework 2, Question 5,

the representation  $(T)_{\mathcal{B},\mathcal{B}}$  can be written as the block matrix

$$(T)_{\mathcal{B},\mathcal{B}} = \begin{pmatrix} (T|_W)_{C,C} & \times \\ \mathbf{0} & (\tilde{T})_{\overline{\mathcal{B}},\overline{\mathcal{B}}} \end{pmatrix}_{(k+(n-k)) \times (k+(n-k))}$$

Therefore, the characteristic polynomial of  $T$  can be calculated as:

$$\begin{aligned} \chi_T(x) &= \det((T)_{\mathcal{B},\mathcal{B}} - xI) \\ &= \det((T|_W)_{C,C} - xI) \cdot \det((\tilde{T})_{\overline{\mathcal{B}},\overline{\mathcal{B}}} - xI) \end{aligned}$$

■

**Proposition 7.11** Suppose that

$$\chi_T(x) = (x - \lambda_1) \cdots (x - \lambda_n)$$

where  $\lambda_i$ 's are not necessarily distinct. Then there exists a basis of  $V$ , say  $\mathcal{A}$ , such that

$$(T)_{\mathcal{A},\mathcal{A}} = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & \times & \times & \times \\ 0 & \lambda_2 & \cdots & \times \\ 0 & \cdots & \ddots & \times \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix}$$

*Proof.* The proof is by induction on  $n$ , i.e., suppose the results hold for all vector spaces with dimension no more than  $n - 1$ , and we aim to show this result holds for dimension  $n$ .

1. **Step 1:** Argue that there exists the associated eigenvector  $\mathbf{v}$  of  $\lambda_1$  under the linear operator  $T$ .

Consider any basis  $\mathcal{M}$ , by MAT2040, there exists associated eigenvector of  $\lambda_1$ , say  $\mathbf{y} \in \mathbb{C}^n$  such that

$$(T)_{\mathcal{M},\mathcal{M}} \cdot \mathbf{y} = \lambda_1 \mathbf{y}$$

Since the operator  $(\cdot)_{\mathcal{M}} : V \rightarrow \mathbb{C}^n$  is an isomorphism, there exists  $\mathbf{v} \in V \setminus \{\mathbf{0}\}$  such

that  $(\mathbf{v})_{\mathcal{M}} = \mathbf{y}$ . It follows that

$$(T)_{\mathcal{M},\mathcal{M}}(\mathbf{v})_{\mathcal{M}} = \lambda_1(\mathbf{v})_{\mathcal{M}} \implies (T\mathbf{v})_{\mathcal{M}} = (\lambda_1\mathbf{v})_{\mathcal{M}} \implies T\mathbf{v} = \lambda_1\mathbf{v}$$

2. **Step 2:** Dimensionality reduction of  $\mathcal{X}_T(x)$ : Construct  $W = \text{span}\{\mathbf{v}\}$ , which is  $T$ -invariant. By the proof of proposition (7.11), we have  $\tilde{T} : V/W \rightarrow V/W$  admits the characteristic polynomial

$$\mathcal{X}_{\tilde{T}}(x) = (x - \lambda_2) \cdots (x - \lambda_n)$$

3. **Step 3:** Applying the induction, there exists basis  $\overline{C}$  of  $V/W$ , i.e.,

$$\overline{C} = \{\mathbf{w}_2 + W, \dots, \mathbf{w}_n + W\}$$

such that

$$(\tilde{T})_{\overline{C},\overline{C}} = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_2 & \times & \times & \times \\ 0 & \lambda_3 & \cdots & \times \\ 0 & \cdots & \ddots & \times \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix}$$

4. **Step 4:** Therefore, we construct the set  $\mathcal{A} := \{\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}_2, \dots, \mathbf{w}_n\}$ . We claim that


- $\mathcal{A}$  is a basis of  $V$  (left as exercise in Hw2, Question 2)
- 

$$(T)_{\mathcal{A},\mathcal{A}} = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & \times \\ \mathbf{0} & (\tilde{T})_{\overline{C},\overline{C}} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & \times & \times & \times \\ 0 & \lambda_2 & \cdots & \times \\ 0 & \cdots & \ddots & \times \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix}$$

(This statement is also left as exercise in Hw2, Question 5.)

■

**Proposition 7.12** Suppose that  $\mathcal{X}_T(x) = (x - \lambda_1) \cdots (x - \lambda_n)$ , then  $\mathcal{X}_T(T) = \mathbf{0}$ .

 One special case is that  $\mathbf{A} = \text{diag}(\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_n)$ . The results for proposition (7.12)

gives

$(A - \lambda_1 I) \cdots (A - \lambda_n I)$  is a zero matrix





# Chapter 8

## Week8


### 8.1. Monday for MAT3040

Reviewing.

- If  $\chi_T(x) = (x - \lambda_1) \cdots (x - \lambda_n)$ , then

$$(T)_{\mathcal{A},\mathcal{A}} = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & \times & \times & \times \\ 0 & \lambda_2 & \cdots & \times \\ 0 & \cdots & \ddots & \times \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix}$$

for some basis  $\mathcal{A}$ . In other words,  $T$  is **triangularizable** with the diagonal entries  $\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_n$ .

-  I hope you appreciate this result. Consider the example below: In linear algebra we have studied that the matrix  $\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$  is not diagonalizable, and the characteristic polynomial is given by

$$\chi_{\mathbf{A}}(x) = (x - 1)^2.$$

However, the theorem above claims that  $\mathbf{A}$  is *triangularizable*, with diagonal entries 1 and 1. The diagonalization of  $\mathbf{A}$  only uses the eigenvector of  $\mathbf{A}$ , but the 1-eigenspace has only 1 dimension. Fortunately, the triangularization gives a rescue such that we can make use of the generalized eigenvector

$(0,1)^T$  (but not an eigenvector) of  $\mathbf{A}$  by considering the mapping below:

$$U = \text{span} \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \right\}$$

$$\bar{A}: V/U \rightarrow V/U$$

Here  $(0,1)^T + U$  is an eigenvector of  $\bar{A}$ , with eigenvalue 1.

**Theorem 8.1** The linear operator  $T$  is triangularizable with diagonal entries  $(\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_n)$  if and only if

$$\chi_T = (x - \lambda_1) \cdots (x - \lambda_n)$$

*Proof.* It suffices to show only the sufficiency. Suppose that there exists basis  $\mathcal{A}$  such that

$$(T)_{\mathcal{A},\mathcal{A}} = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & \times & \times & \times \\ 0 & \lambda_2 & \cdots & \times \\ 0 & \cdots & \ddots & \times \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix}$$

Then we compute the characteristic polynomial directly:

$$\begin{aligned} \chi_T(x) &= \det[(xI - T)_{\mathcal{A},\mathcal{A}}] \\ &= \det \begin{pmatrix} x - \lambda_1 & \times & \times & \times \\ 0 & x - \lambda_2 & \cdots & \times \\ 0 & \cdots & \ddots & \times \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & x - \lambda_n \end{pmatrix} \\ &= (x - \lambda_1) \cdots (x - \lambda_n) \end{aligned}$$

■

### 8.1.1. Cayley-Hamilton Theorem

**Proposition 8.1 — A Useful Lemma.** Suppose that  $\chi_T(x) = (x - \lambda_1) \cdots (x - \lambda_n)$ , then  $\chi_T(T) = 0$ .

*Proof.* Since  $\chi_T(x) = (x - \lambda_1) \cdots (x - \lambda_n)$ , we imply  $T$  is triangularizable under some basis  $\mathcal{A}$ . Note that

- $T \mapsto (T)_{\mathcal{A},\mathcal{A}}$  is an isomorphism between  $\text{Hom}(V, V)$  and  $M_{n \times n}(\mathbb{F})$ ,
- $\underbrace{(T \circ T \circ \cdots \circ T)}_{m \text{ times}}_{\mathcal{A},\mathcal{A}} = [(T)_{\mathcal{A},\mathcal{A}}]^m$ , for any  $m$ ,

It suffices to show  $\chi_T((T)_{\mathcal{A},\mathcal{A}})$  is the zero matrix (why?):

$$\chi_T((T)_{\mathcal{A},\mathcal{A}}) = ((T)_{\mathcal{A},\mathcal{A}} - \lambda_1 \mathbf{I}) \cdots ((T)_{\mathcal{A},\mathcal{A}} - \lambda_n \mathbf{I}).$$

Observe the matrix multiplication

$$((T)_{\mathcal{A},\mathcal{A}} - \lambda_i \mathbf{I}) \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ \vdots \\ x_i \\ 0 \\ \vdots \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 - \lambda_i & \times & \times & \times \\ 0 & \lambda_2 - \lambda_i & \cdots & \times \\ 0 & \cdots & \ddots & \times \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & \lambda_n - \lambda_i \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ \vdots \\ x_i \\ 0 \\ \vdots \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \in \text{span}\{\mathbf{e}_1, \dots, \mathbf{e}_{i-1}\}$$

Therefore, for any  $\mathbf{v} \in V$ ,

$$((T)_{\mathcal{A},\mathcal{A}} - \lambda_n \mathbf{I}) \mathbf{v} \in \text{span}\{\mathbf{e}_1, \dots, \mathbf{e}_{n-1}\}.$$

Applying the same trick, we conclude that

$$((T)_{\mathcal{A},\mathcal{A}} - \lambda_1 \mathbf{I}) \cdots ((T)_{\mathcal{A},\mathcal{A}} - \lambda_n \mathbf{I}) \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{0}, \quad \forall \mathbf{v} \in V,$$

i.e.,  $\chi_T((T)_{\mathcal{A},\mathcal{A}}) = ((T)_{\mathcal{A},\mathcal{A}} - \lambda_1 \mathbf{I}) \cdots ((T)_{\mathcal{A},\mathcal{A}} - \lambda_n \mathbf{I})$  is a zero matrix. ■

Now we are ready to give a proof for the Cayley-Hamilton Theorem:

*Proof.* Suppose that  $\mathcal{X}_T(x) = x^n + a_{n-1}x^{n-1} + \cdots + a_0 \in \mathbb{F}[x]$ . By considering algebraically closed field  $\overline{\mathbb{F}} \supseteq \mathbb{F}$ , we imply

$$\mathcal{X}_T(x) = x^n + a_{n-1}x^{n-1} + \cdots + a_0 \quad (8.1a)$$

$$= (x - \lambda_1) \cdots (x - \lambda_n), \quad \lambda_i \in \overline{\mathbb{F}} \quad (8.1b)$$

By applying proposition (8.1), we imply  $\mathcal{X}_T(T) = 0$ , where the coefficients in the formula  $\mathcal{X}_T(T) = 0$  w.r.t.  $T$  are in  $\overline{\mathbb{F}}$ .

Then we argue that these coefficients are essentially in  $\mathbb{F}$ . Expand the whole map of  $\mathcal{X}_T(T)$ :

$$\mathcal{X}_T(T) = (T - \lambda_1 I) \cdots (T - \lambda_n I) \quad (8.2a)$$

$$= T^n - (\lambda_1 + \cdots + \lambda_n)T^{n-1} + \cdots + (-1)^n \lambda_1 \cdots \lambda_n I \quad (8.2b)$$

$$= T^n + a_{n-1}T^{n-1} + \cdots + a_0 I \quad (8.2c)$$

where the derivation of (8.2c) is because that the polynomial coefficients for (8.1a) and (8.1b) are all identical.

Therefore, we conclude that  $\mathcal{X}_T(T) = 0$ , under the field  $\mathbb{F}$ . ■

**Corollary 8.1**  $m_T(x) \mid \mathcal{X}_T(x)$ . More precisely, if

$$\mathcal{X}_T(x) = [p_1(x)]^{e_1} \cdots [p_k(x)]^{e_k}, \quad e_i > 0, \forall i$$

where  $p_i$ 's are distinct, monic, and irreducible polynomials. Then

$$m_T(x) = [p_1(x)]^{f_1} \cdots [p_k(x)]^{f_k}, \quad \text{for some } 0 < f_i \leq e_i, \forall i$$

*Proof.* The statement  $m_T(x) \mid \mathcal{X}_T(x)$  is from Cayley-Hamilton Theorem. Therefore,  $0 \leq f_i \leq e_i, \forall i$ . Suppose on the contrary that  $f_i = 0$  for some  $i$ . w.l.o.g.,  $i = 1$ .

It's clear that  $\gcd(p_1, p_j) = 1$  for  $\forall j \neq 1$ , which implies

$$a(x)p_1(x) + b(x)p_j(x) = 1, \quad \text{for some } a(x), b(x) \in \mathbb{F}[x].$$

Considering the field extension  $\overline{\mathbb{F}} \supseteq \mathbb{F}$ , we have  $p_1(x) = (x - \mu_1) \cdots (x - \mu_\ell)$ . For any root  $\mu_m$  of  $p_1$ ,  $m = 1, \dots, \ell$ , we have

$$a(\mu_m)p_1(\mu_m) + b(\mu_m)p_j(\mu_m) = 1 \implies b(\mu_m)p_j(\mu_m) = 1 \implies p_j(\mu_m) \neq 0,$$

i.e.,  $\mu_m$  is not a root of  $p_j$ ,  $\forall j \neq 1$ .

Therefore,  $\mu_m$  is a root of  $\chi_T(x)$ , but not a root of  $m_T(x)$ . Then  $\mu_m$  is an eigenvalue of  $T$ , e.g.,  $T\mathbf{v} = \mu_m\mathbf{v}$  for some  $\mathbf{v} \neq \mathbf{0}$ . Recall that  $m_{T,\mathbf{v}} = x - \mu_m$ , we imply  $m_{T,\mathbf{v}} = x - \mu_m \mid m_T(x)$ , which is a contradiction. ■

■ **Example 8.1** We can use Corollary (8.1), a stronger version of Cayley-Hamilton Theorem to determine the minimal polynomials:

1. For matrix  $\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$ , we imply  $\chi_A(x) = (x^2 + x + 1)^1$ . Since  $x^2 + x + 1$  is irreducible in  $\mathbb{R}$ , we have  $m_A(x) = x^2 + x + 1$ .

2. For matrix

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 2 \end{pmatrix},$$

we imply  $\chi_A(x) = (x - 1)^2(x - 2)^2$ .

By Corollary (8.1), we imply both  $(x - 1)$  and  $(x - 2)$  should be roots of  $m_T(x)$ , i.e.,  $m_A(x)$  may have the four options:

$$(x - 1)^2(x - 2)^2, \text{ or}$$

$$(x - 1)(x - 2)^2, \text{ or}$$

$$(x - 1)^2(x - 2), \text{ or}$$

$$(x - 1)(x - 2).$$

By trial and error, one sees that  $m_A(x) = (x - 1)^2(x - 2)$ .

## 8.1.2. Primary Decomposition Theorem

We know that not every linear operator is diagonalizable, but diagonalization has some nice properties:

**Definition 8.1** [diagonalizable] The linear operator  $T : V \rightarrow V$  is diagonalizable over  $\mathbb{F}$  if and only if there exists a basis  $\mathcal{A}$  of  $V$  such that

$$(T)_{\mathcal{A},\mathcal{A}} = \text{diag}(\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_n),$$

where  $\lambda_i$ 's are not necessarily distinct.

**Proposition 8.2** If the linear operator  $T : V \rightarrow V$  is diagonalizable, then

$$m_T(x) = (x - \mu_1) \cdots (x - \mu_k),$$

where  $\mu_i$ 's are **distinct**.

*Proof.* Suppose  $T$  is diagonalizable, then there exists a basis  $\mathcal{A}$  of  $V$  such that

$$(T)_{\mathcal{A},\mathcal{A}} = \text{diag}(\mu_1, \dots, \mu_1, \mu_2, \dots, \mu_2, \dots, \mu_k, \dots, \mu_k)$$

It's clear that  $((T)_{\mathcal{A},\mathcal{A}} - \mu_1 \mathbf{I}) \cdots ((T)_{\mathcal{A},\mathcal{A}} - \mu_k \mathbf{I}) = \mathbf{0}$ , i.e.,  $m_T(x) \mid (x - \mu_1) \cdots (x - \mu_k)$ .

Then we show the minimality of  $(x - \mu_1) \cdots (x - \mu_k)$ . In particular, if  $(x - \mu_i)$  is omitted for any  $1 \leq i \leq k$ , then it's easy to show

$$(T_{\mathcal{A},\mathcal{A}} - \mu_1 \mathbf{I}) \cdots (T_{\mathcal{A},\mathcal{A}} - \mu_{i-1} \mathbf{I})(T_{\mathcal{A},\mathcal{A}} - \mu_{i+1} \mathbf{I}) \cdots (T_{\mathcal{A},\mathcal{A}} - \mu_k \mathbf{I}) \neq \mathbf{0},$$

since all  $\mu_i$ 's are distinct. Therefore,  $m_T(x)$  will not divide  $(x - \mu_1) \cdots (x - \mu_{i-1})(x - \mu_{i+1}) \cdots (x - \mu_k)$  for any  $i$ , i.e.,

$$m_T(x) = (x - \mu_1) \cdots (x - \mu_k)$$

■

- Ⓡ The converse of proposition (8.2) is also true, which is a special case for the Primary Decomposition Theorem.

**Theorem 8.2 — Primary Decomposition Theorem.** Let  $T : V \rightarrow V$  be a linear operator with

$$m_T(x) = [p_1(x)]^{e_1} \cdots [p_k(x)]^{e_k},$$

where  $p_i$ 's are distinct, monic, and irreducible polynomials. Let  $V_i = \ker([p_i(x)]^{e_i}) \leq V, i = 1, \dots, k$ , then

1. Each  $V_i$  is  $T$ -invariant ( $T(V_i) \leq V_i$ )
2.  $V = V_1 \oplus V_2 \oplus \cdots \oplus V_k$
3. Consider  $T|_{V_i} : V_i \rightarrow V_i$ , then

$$m_{T|_{V_i}}(x) = [p_i(x)]^{e_i}$$





# Chapter 9

## Week9

### 9.1. Monday for MAT3040

Reviewing.

- $\chi_T(x) = (x - \lambda_1) \cdots (x - \lambda_n)$  over  $\mathbb{F}$  if and only if  $T$  is triangularizable over  $\mathbb{F}$ .
- $m_T(x) = (x - \mu_1) \cdots (x - \mu_k)$ , where  $\mu_i$ 's are distinct over  $\mathbb{F}$  if and only if  $T$  is diagonalizable over  $\mathbb{F}$ .

The converse for this statement is the proposition (8.2). Let's focus on the proof for the forward direction.

#### 9.1.1. Remarks on Primary Decomposition Theorem

**Theorem 9.1 — Primary Decomposition Theorem.** Let  $T : V \rightarrow V$  be a linear operator with  $\dim(V) < \infty$ , and

$$m_T(x) = [p_1(x)]^{e_1} \cdots [p_k(x)]^{e_k}$$

where  $p_i$ 's are distinct, monic, irreducible polynomials. Let  $V_i = \ker(p_i(T)^{e_i})$ , then

1. each  $V_i$  is  $T$ -invariant (i.e.,  $T(V_i) \leq V_i$ )
2.  $V = V_1 \oplus \cdots \oplus V_k$
3.  $T|_{V_i}$  has the minimal polynomial  $p_i(x)^{e_i}$ .

*Proof.* 1. (1) follows from part (2) for example (??).

2. Let  $q_i(x) = [p_1(x)]^{e_1} \cdots \widehat{[p_i(x)]^{e_i}} \cdots [p_k(x)]^{e_k} := m_T(x)/[p_i(x)]^{e_i}$ , then it is clear that

- (a)  $\gcd(q_1, \dots, q_k) = 1$
- (b)  $\gcd(q_i, p_i^{e_i}) = 1$
- (c)  $q_i \cdot p_i^{e_i} = m_T$
- (d) If  $i \neq j$ , then  $m_T(x) \mid q_i(x)q_j(x)$

- By (a) and Bezout's Theorem (6.7), there exists polynomials  $a_1, \dots, a_k$  such that

$$a_1(x)q_1(x) + \cdots + a_k(x)q_k(x) = 1,$$

which implies

$$\underbrace{a_1(T)q_1(T)\mathbf{v} + \cdots + a_k(T)q_k(T)\mathbf{v}}_{\mathbf{v}_1} = \mathbf{v}$$

Therefore,  $\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{v}_1 + \cdots + \mathbf{v}_k$  for our constructed  $\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_k$ .

- Note that

$$p_i(T)^{e_i} \mathbf{v}_i = p_i(T)^{e_i} a_i(T) q_i(T) \mathbf{v} = a_i(T) [q_i(T) p_i(T)^{e_i}] \mathbf{v} = a_i(T) m_T(T) \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{0},$$

whcih implies  $\mathbf{v}_i \in \ker([p_i(T)]^{e_i}) := V_i$ , and therefore

$$V = V_1 + \cdots + V_k \tag{9.1}$$

- To show that the summation in (9.3) is essentially the direct sum, consider

$$\mathbf{0} = \mathbf{v}'_1 + \cdots + \mathbf{v}'_k, \quad \forall \mathbf{v}'_i \in V_i. \tag{9.2}$$

By (a) and Bezout's Theorem (6.7), there exists  $b_i(x), c_i(x)$  such that

$$b_i(x)q_i(x) + c_i(x)p_i(x)^{e_i} = 1 \implies b_i(T)q_i(T) + c_i(T)p_i(T)^{e_i} = I,$$

i.e.,

$$b_i(T)q_i(T)\mathbf{v}'_i + c_i(T)p_i(T)^{e_i} \mathbf{v}'_i = b_i(T)q_i(T)\mathbf{v}'_i = \mathbf{v}'_i.$$

Applying the mapping  $b_i(T)q_i(T)$  into equality (9.4) both sides,  $i = 1, \dots, k$ , we obtain

$$\mathbf{0} = b_i(T)q_i(T)\mathbf{0} = b_i(T)q_i(T)\mathbf{v}'_1 + \dots + b_i(T)q_i(T)\mathbf{v}'_k$$

Note that all terms on RHS vanish except for  $b_i(T)q_i(T)\mathbf{v}'_i = \mathbf{v}'_i$ , since  $q_i(x) = [p_1(x)]^{e_1} \dots [\widehat{p_i(x)}]^{e_i} \dots [p_k(x)]^{e_k}$  and  $\mathbf{v}'_j \in \ker([p_j(x)]^{e_j})$ . Therefore,  $\mathbf{v}'_i = 0$  for  $i = 1, \dots, k$ , i.e.,  $V = V_1 \oplus \dots \oplus V_k$ .

3. For any  $\mathbf{v}_i \in V_i$ , we have  $p_i(T)^{e_i} \mathbf{v}_i = \mathbf{0}$ , which implies  $m_{T|V_i}(x) \mid p_i(x)^{e_i}$ . Together with Corollary (8.1),  $m_{T|V_i}(x) = p_i(x)^{f_i}$  for some  $1 \leq f_i \leq e_i$ .

Suppose on the contrary that there exists  $f_i < e_i$  for some  $i$ , consider any  $\mathbf{v} := \mathbf{v}_1 + \dots + \mathbf{v}_k \in V$ , and

$$p_1(T)^{f_1} \dots p_k(T)^{f_k} \mathbf{v} = p_1(T)^{f_1} \dots p_k(T)^{f_k} (\mathbf{v}_1 + \dots + \mathbf{v}_k)$$

The term on the RHS vanishes since  $p_j(T)^{f_j} \mathbf{v}_j = \mathbf{0}$ , which implies

$$m_T \mid p_1^{f_1} \dots p_k^{f_k},$$

but there exists  $i$  such that  $e_i > f_i$ , which is a contradiction. ■

**Corollary 9.1** If  $m_i(x) = (x - \mu_1) \dots (x - \mu_k)$  over  $\mathbb{F}$ , where  $\mu_i$ 's are distinct, then  $T$  is diagonalizable over  $\mathbb{F}$ . (the converse actually also holds, see proposition (8.2))

*Proof.* By primary decomposition theorem,

$$V = \underbrace{\ker(T - \mu_1 I)}_{V_1} \oplus \dots \oplus \underbrace{\ker(T - \mu_k I)}_{V_k}$$

Take  $B_i$  as a basis of  $V_i$ , an  $\mu_i$ -eigenspace of  $T$ . Then  $B := \cup_{i=1}^k B_i$  is a basis consisting of eigenvectors of  $T$ .

It's clear that  $(T|_{V_i})_{\mathcal{B},\mathcal{B}} = \text{diag}(\mu_i, \dots, \mu_i)$ , and  $T$  is diagonalizable with

$$(T)_{\mathcal{B},\mathcal{B}} = \text{diag}((T|_{V_1})_{\mathcal{B},\mathcal{B}}, \dots, (T|_{V_k})_{\mathcal{B},\mathcal{B}}).$$

■

**Corollary 9.2** [Spectral Decomposition] Suppose  $T : V \rightarrow V$  is diagonalizable, then there exists a linear operator  $p_i : V \rightarrow V$  for  $1 \leq i \leq k$  such that

- $p_i^2 = p_i$  (idempotent)
- $p_i p_j = 0, \forall i \neq j$
- $\sum_{i=1}^k p_i = I$
- $p_i T = T p_i, \forall i$

and scalars  $\mu_1, \dots, \mu_k$  such that

$$T = \mu_1 p_1 + \dots + \mu_k p_k$$

*Proof.* Diagonalization of  $T$  is equivalent to say that  $m_T(x) = (x - \mu_1) \cdots (x - \mu_k)$ , where  $\mu_i$ 's are distinct. Construct

- $V_i := \ker(T - \mu_i I)$
- $p_i : V \rightarrow V$  given by  $p_i = a_i(T)q_i(T)$  as in the proof of primary decomposition theorem

Then:

- $p_i T = T p_i$  is obvious
- $\sum_{i=1}^k p_i = \sum_{i=1}^k a_i(T)q_i(T) = I$
- $p_i p_j = a_i(T)a_j(T)q_i(T)q_j(T) := a_i(T)a_j(T)s(T)m_T(T) = \mathbf{0}$
- $p_i^2 = p_i(p_1 + \dots + p_k) = p_i \cdot I = p_i$

For the last part, note that

- $p_i V \leq V_i, \forall i$ : for  $\forall \mathbf{v} \in V$ ,

$$(T - \mu_i I)p_i \mathbf{v} = (T - \mu_i I)a_i(T)q_i(T)\mathbf{v} = a_i(T)m_T(x)\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{0}$$

Therefore,  $p_i V \leq \ker(T - \mu_i I) = V_i$

- Now, for all  $\mathbf{w} \in V$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} T\mathbf{w} &= T(p_1 + \cdots + p_k)\mathbf{w} \\ &= Tp_1\mathbf{w} + \cdots + Tp_k\mathbf{w} \\ &= (\mu_1 p_1)\mathbf{w} + \cdots + (\mu_k p_k)\mathbf{w} \end{aligned}$$

and therefore  $T = \mu_1 p_1 + \cdots + \mu_k p_k$

■

**Organization of future two weeks.** We are interested in under which condition does the  $T$  is diagonalizable. One special case is  $T = A$ , where  $\mathbf{A}$  is a symmetric matrix. We will study normal operators, which includes the case for symmetric matrices.

Question: what happens if  $m_T(x)$  contains repeated linear factors? We will spend the next whole class to show the Jordan Normal Form:

**Theorem 9.2 — Jordan Normal Form.** Let  $\mathbb{F}$  be algebraically closed field such that every linear operator  $T : V \rightarrow V$  has the form

$$m_T(x) = \prod_{i=1}^k (x - \lambda_i)^{e_i}$$

where  $\lambda_i$ 's are distinct.

Then there exists basis  $\mathcal{A}$  of  $V$  such that

$$(T)_{\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{A}} = \text{diag}(\mathbf{J}_1, \dots, \mathbf{J}_k)$$

where

$$\mathbf{J}_i = \begin{pmatrix} \mu & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \mu & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & \mu \end{pmatrix}$$

for some  $\mu \in \{\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_k\}$

## 9.4. Wednesday for MAT3040

### 9.4.1. Jordan Normal Form

**Theorem 9.3 — Jordan Normal Form.** Suppose that  $T : V \rightarrow V$  has minimal polynomial

$$m_T(x) = \prod_{i=1}^k (x - \lambda_i)^{e_i},$$

then there exists a basis  $\mathcal{A}$  such that

$$(T)_{\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{A}} = \text{diag}(J_1, \dots, J_\ell),$$

where each block  $J_i$  is a square matrix of the form

$$J_i = \begin{bmatrix} \mu_i & 1 & & \\ & \mu_i & \ddots & \\ & & \ddots & 1 \\ & & & \mu_i \end{bmatrix}.$$

**R** By primary decomposition theorem,

$$V = V_1 \oplus \dots \oplus V_k, \quad \text{where } V_i = \ker((T - \lambda_i I)^{e_i}), \quad i = 1, \dots, k,$$

and each  $V_i$  is  $T$ -invariant.

We pick basis  $\mathcal{B}_i$  for each subspace  $V_i$ , then  $\mathcal{B} := \cup_{i=1}^k \mathcal{B}_i$  is a basis of  $V$ , and

$$(T)_{\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{B}} = \begin{pmatrix} (T|_{V_1})_{\mathcal{B}_1, \mathcal{B}_1} & 0 & \dots & 0 \\ 0 & (T|_{V_2})_{\mathcal{B}_2, \mathcal{B}_2} & \vdots & 0 \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \vdots \\ 0 & \dots & \vdots & (T|_{V_k})_{\mathcal{B}_k, \mathcal{B}_k} \end{pmatrix}$$

with  $m_{T|_{V_i}}(x) = (x - \lambda_i)^{e_i}$ .

Therefore, it suffices to show the Jordan normal form holds for the linear operator



$T$  with minimal polynomial  $m_T(x) = (x - \lambda)^e$ .

Firstly, we consider the case where the minimal polynomial has the form  $x^m$ :

**Proposition 9.6** Suppose  $T : V \rightarrow V$  is such that  $m_T(x) = x^m$ , then the theorem (9.3) holds, i.e., there exists a basis  $\mathcal{A}$  such that

$$(T)_{\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{A}} = \text{diag}(\mathbf{J}_1, \dots, \mathbf{J}_\ell),$$

where each block  $J_i$  is a square matrix of the form

$$J_i = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & & \\ & 0 & \ddots & \\ & & \ddots & 1 \\ & & & 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$

*Proof.* • Suppose that  $m_T(x) = x^m$ , then it is clear that

$$\{0\} := \ker(T^0) \leq \ker(T) \leq \ker(T^2) \leq \dots \leq \ker(T^m) := V$$

Furthermore, we have  $\ker(T^{i-1}) \subsetneq \ker(T^i)$  for  $i = 1, \dots, m$ : Note that  $\ker(T^{m-1}) \subsetneq \ker(T^m) := V$  due to the minimality of  $m_T(x)$ ; and  $\ker(T^{m-2}) \subsetneq \ker(T^{m-1})$  since otherwise for any  $\mathbf{x} \in \ker(T^m)$ ,

$$T^{m-1}(T\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{0} \implies T\mathbf{x} \in \ker(T^{m-1}) = \ker(T^{m-2}) \implies T^{m-2}(T\mathbf{x}) = T^{m-1}(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{0},$$

i.e.,  $\mathbf{x} \in \ker(T^{m-1})$ , which contradicts to the fact that  $\ker(T^{m-1}) \subsetneq \ker(T^m)$ . Proceeding this trick sequentially for  $i = m, m-1, \dots, 1$ , we proved the desired result.

- Then construct the quotient space  $W_i = \ker(T^i)/\ker(T^{i-1})$  and define  $\mathcal{B}'_i$  to be a basis of  $W_i$ :

$$\mathcal{B}'_i = \{a_1^i + \ker(T^{i-1}), \dots, a_{\ell_i}^i + \ker(T^{i-1})\}$$

Construct  $\mathcal{B}_i = \{a_1^i, \dots, a_{\ell_i}^i\}$ , then we claim that  $B := \cup_{i=1}^m \mathcal{B}_i$  forms a basis of  $V$ :

- First proof the case  $m = 2$  first: let  $U \leq V$  ( $\dim(V) < \infty$ ), and  $\mathcal{B}_1 = \{a_1^1, \dots, a_{k_1}^1\}$  be a basis of  $U$ , and

$$\mathcal{B}_2' = \{a_1^2 + U, \dots, a_{k_2}^2 + U\}$$

be a basis of  $V/U$ . Then to show the statement suffices to show that

$$\bigcup_{i=1}^2 \{a_1^i, \dots, a_{k_i}^i\} \text{ forms a basis of } V.$$

It's clear that  $\cup_{i=1}^2 \{a_1^i, \dots, a_{k_i}^i\}$  spans  $V$ . Furthermore,  $\dim(V) = \dim(U) + \dim(V/U) = k_1 + k_2$ , i.e.,  $\cup_{i=1}^2 \{a_1^i, \dots, a_{k_i}^i\}$  contains correct amount of vectors. The proof is complete.

- This result can be extended from 2 to general  $m$ , thus the claim is shown.
- For  $i < m$ , consider the set  $S_i = \{T(\mathbf{w}_j) + \ker(T^{i-1}) \mid \mathbf{w}_j \in B_{i+1}\}$ . Note that
  - Since  $T^{i+1}(\mathbf{w}_j) = \mathbf{0}$ ,  $T^i(T(\mathbf{w}_j)) = \mathbf{0}$ , we imply  $T(\mathbf{w}_j) \in \ker(T^i)$ , i.e.,  $S_i \subseteq W_i$ .
  - The set  $S_i$  is linearly independent: consider the equation

$$\sum_j k_j(T(\mathbf{w}_j) + \ker(T^{i-1})) = \mathbf{0}_{W_i} \iff T\left(\sum_j k_j \mathbf{w}_j\right) + \ker(T^{i-1}) = \mathbf{0}_{W_i}$$

i.e.,

$$T\left(\sum_j k_j \mathbf{w}_j\right) \in \ker(T^{i-1}) \iff T^{i-1}(T(\sum_j k_j \mathbf{w}_j)) = \mathbf{0}_V,$$

i.e.,  $\sum_j k_j \mathbf{w}_j \in \ker(T^i)$ , i.e.,

$$\sum_j k_j \mathbf{w}_j + \ker(T^i) = \mathbf{0}_{W_{i+1}} \iff \sum_j k_j(\mathbf{w}_j + \ker(T^i)) = \mathbf{0}_{W_{i+1}}.$$

Since  $\{\mathbf{w}_j + \ker(T^i), \forall j\}$  forms a basis of  $W_{i+1}$ , we imply  $k_j = 0, \forall j$ .

From  $\mathcal{B}_{i+1}$  we construct  $S_i$ , which is linearly independent in  $W_i$ . Therefore, we imply  $|T(\mathcal{B}_{i+1})| \leq |\mathcal{B}_i|$  for  $\forall i < m$  (why?).

- Now we start to construct a basis  $\mathcal{A}$  of  $V$ :
  - Start with  $\mathcal{B}_m' := \{u_1^m + \ker(T^{m-1}), \dots, u_{\ell_m}^m + \ker(T^{m-1})\}$ , and  $\mathcal{B}_m = \{u_1^m, \dots, u_{\ell_m}^m\}$ .

– By the previous result,

$$\{T(u_1^m) + \ker(T^{m-2}), \dots, T(u_{\ell_m}^m) + \ker(T^{m-2})\}$$

is linear independent in  $W_{m-1}$ . By basis extension, we get a basis  $\mathcal{B}'_{m-1}$  of  $W_{m-1}$ , and let

$$\mathcal{B}_{m-1} = \{T(u_1^m), \dots, T(u_{\ell_m}^m)\} \cup \xi_{m-1}$$

where  $\xi_{m-1} := \{u_1^{m-1}, \dots, u_{\ell_{m-1}}^{m-1}\}$

– Continue the process above to obtain  $\mathcal{B}_{m-2}, \dots, \mathcal{B}_1$ , and  $\cup_{i=1}^m \mathcal{B}_i$  forms a basis of  $V$ :

$\mathcal{B}_1$	$\mathcal{B}_2$	$\dots$	$\mathcal{B}_{m-1}$	$\mathcal{B}_m$
$\{T^{m-1}(u_1^m), \dots, T^{m-1}(u_{\ell_m}^m)\}$	$\{T^{m-2}(u_1^m), \dots, T^{m-2}(u_{\ell_m}^m)\}$	$\dots$	$\{T(u_1^m), \dots, T(u_{\ell_m}^m)\}$	$\{u_1^m, \dots, u_{\ell_m}^m\}$
$\{T^{m-2}(u_1^{m-1}), \dots, T^{m-2}(u_{\ell_{m-1}}^{m-1})\}$	$\{T^{m-3}(u_1^{m-1}), \dots, T^{m-3}(u_{\ell_{m-1}}^{m-1})\}$	$\dots$	$\{u_1^{m-1}, \dots, u_{\ell_{m-1}}^{m-1}\}$	
$\vdots$	$\vdots$			
$\{T(u_1^2), \dots, T(u_{\ell_2}^2)\}$	$\{u_1^2, \dots, u_{\ell_2}^2\}$			
$\{u_1^1, \dots, u_{\ell_1}^1\}$				

– Now construct the ordered basis  $\mathcal{A}$ :

$$\mathcal{A} = \left( \begin{array}{cccccc} T^{m-1}(u_1^m) & \dots & T^2(u_1^m) & T(u_1^m) & u_1^m & \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \vdots & \\ T^{m-1}(u_{\ell_m}^m) & \dots & T^2(u_{\ell_m}^m) & T(u_{\ell_m}^m) & u_{\ell_m}^m & \\ & T^{m-2}(u_1^{m-1}) & \dots & T(u_1^{m-1}) & u_1^{m-1} & \\ & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \vdots & \\ & T^{m-2}(u_{\ell_{m-1}}^{m-1}) & \dots & T(u_{\ell_{m-1}}^{m-1}) & u_{\ell_{m-1}}^{m-1} & \\ & & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \\ & & & & u_1^1 & \\ & & & & \vdots & \\ & & & & u_{\ell_1}^1 & \end{array} \right)$$

- Then the diagonal entries of  $(T)_{\mathcal{A},\mathcal{A}}$  should be all zero, since

$$T(T^{i-1}(u_j^i)) = T^i(u_j^i) = 0, \forall i = 1, \dots, m, j = 1, \dots, \ell_i,$$

and every entry on the superdiagonal is 1:

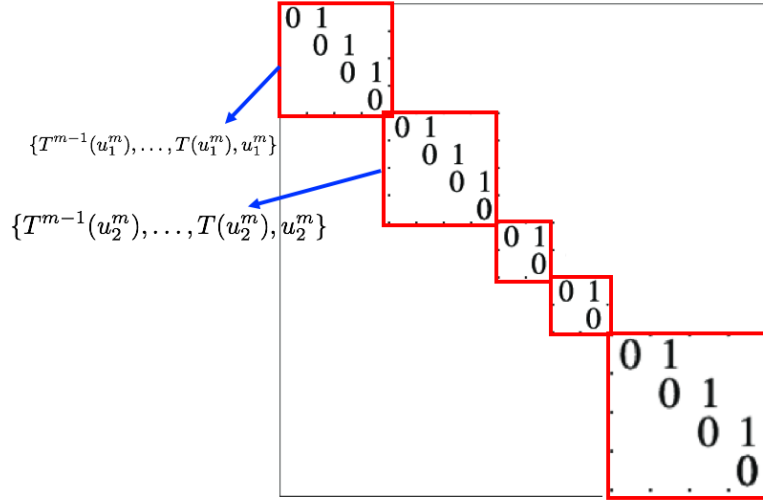


Figure 9.2: Illustration for  $(T)_{\mathcal{A},\mathcal{A}}$

■

Then we consider the case where  $m_T(x) = (x - \lambda)^e$ :

**Corollary 9.3** Suppose  $T : V \rightarrow V$  is such that  $m_T(x) = (x - \lambda)^e$ , then the theorem (9.3) holds, i.e., there exists a basis  $\mathcal{A}$  such that

$$(T)_{\mathcal{A},\mathcal{A}} = \text{diag}(J_1, \dots, J_\ell),$$

where each block  $J_i$  is a square matrix of the form

$$J_i = \begin{bmatrix} \lambda & 1 & & \\ & \lambda & \ddots & \\ & & \ddots & 1 \\ & & & \lambda \end{bmatrix}.$$

*Proof.* Suppose that  $m_T(x) = (x - \lambda)^e$ . Consider the operator  $U := T - \lambda I$ , then  $m_U(x) = x^e$ .

By applying proposition (9.6),

$$(U)_{\mathcal{A},\mathcal{A}} = \text{diag}(\mathbf{J}_1, \dots, \mathbf{J}_\ell),$$

where

$$\mathbf{J}_i = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & & \\ & 0 & \ddots & \\ & & \ddots & 1 \\ & & & 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Or equivalently,

$$(T)_{\mathcal{A},\mathcal{A}} - \lambda(I)_{\mathcal{A},\mathcal{A}} = \text{diag}(\mathbf{J}_1, \dots, \mathbf{J}_\ell)$$


i.e.,

$$(T)_{\mathcal{A},\mathcal{A}} = \text{diag}(\mathbf{K}_1, \dots, \mathbf{K}_\ell),$$

where

$$\mathbf{K}_i = \begin{bmatrix} \lambda & 1 & & \\ & \lambda & \ddots & \\ & & \ddots & 1 \\ & & & \lambda \end{bmatrix}$$

■

 The Jordan Normal Form Theorem (9.3) follows from our arguments using the primary decomposition.

**Corollary 9.4** Any matrix  $A \in M_{n \times n}(\mathbb{C})$  is similar to a matrix of the Jordan normal form

$$\text{diag}(\mathbf{J}_1, \dots, \mathbf{J}_\ell).$$

## 9.4.2. Inner Product Spaces

**Definition 9.8** [Bilinear] Let  $V$  be a vector space over  $\mathbb{R}$ . A bilinear form on  $V$  is a mapping

$$F : V \times V \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$$

satisfying

1.  $F(\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}) = F(\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{w}) + F(\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w})$
2.  $F(\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v} + \mathbf{w}) = F(\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}) + F(\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{w})$
3.  $F(\lambda \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}) = \lambda F(\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}) = F(\mathbf{u}, \lambda \mathbf{v})$

We say

- $F$  is symmetric if  $F(\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}) = F(\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{u})$
- $F$  is non-degenerate if  $F(\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{w}) = 0$  for  $\forall \mathbf{u} \in V$  implies  $\mathbf{w} = \mathbf{0}$
- $F$  is positive definite if  $F(\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v}) > 0$  for  $\forall \mathbf{v} \neq \mathbf{0}$

**R** If  $F$  is positive-definite, then  $F$  is non-degenerate: Suppose that  $F(\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v}) > 0, \forall \mathbf{v} \neq \mathbf{0}$ . If we have  $F(\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{w}) = 0$  for any  $\mathbf{u} \in V$ , then in particular, when  $\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{w}$ , we imply  $F(\mathbf{w}, \mathbf{w}) = 0$ . By positive-definiteness,  $\mathbf{w} = \mathbf{0}$ , i.e.,  $F$  is non-degenerate.

# Chapter 10

## Week10

### 10.1. Monday for MAT3040

#### 10.1.1. Inner Product Space

- Symmetric:  $F(\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{w}) = F(\mathbf{w}, \mathbf{u}), \forall \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{w}$
- Non-degenerate:  $F(\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{w}) = 0, \forall \mathbf{w}$  implies  $\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{0}$
- Positive definite:  $F(\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v}) > 0, \forall \mathbf{v} \neq \mathbf{0}$

**Classification.** When we say  $V$  be a vector space over  $\mathbb{F}$ , we treat  $\alpha \in \mathbb{F}$  as a scalar.


**Definition 10.1** [Sesqui-linear Form] Let  $V$  be a vector space over  $\mathbb{C}$ . A **sesquilinear form** on  $V$  is a function  $F : V \times V \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  such that

1.  $F(\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}) = F(\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{w}) + F(\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w})$
2.  $F(\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v} + \mathbf{w}) = F(\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}) + F(\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{w})$
3.  $F(\bar{\lambda}\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}) = F(\mathbf{v}, \lambda\mathbf{w}) = \lambda F(\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}), \forall \lambda \in \mathbb{C}$

In this case, we say  $F$  is **conjugate symmetric** if

$$F(\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}) = \overline{F(\mathbf{w}, \mathbf{v})}, \quad \forall \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \in V.$$

The definition for non-degenerateness, and positive definiteness is the same as that in bilinear form. ■

 In the sesquilinear form, why there is a  $\bar{\lambda}$  shown in condition (3)?

Partial Answer: We want our  $F$  to be positive definite in many cases:

- Suppose that  $F(\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v}) > 0$  and we do not have  $\bar{\lambda}$  in sesquilinear form  $F$ , it follows that

$$F(i\mathbf{v}, i\mathbf{v}) = i^2 F(\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v}) = -F(\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v}) < 0$$

As a result, there will be no positive bilinear form for vector space over  $\mathbb{C}$ .

Therefore,  $\bar{\lambda}$  is essential to guarantee that we have a positive definite form on vector space over  $\mathbb{C}$ , i.e.,

$$F(i\mathbf{v}, i\mathbf{v}) = \bar{i}i F(\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v}) = F(\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v})$$

■ **Example 10.1** Consider  $V = \mathbb{C}^n$ , and a basic sesquilinear form is the Hermitian inner product:

$$F(\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{u}) = \mathbf{v}^H \mathbf{u} = \begin{pmatrix} \bar{v}_1 & \cdots & \bar{v}_n \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} w_1 \\ \vdots \\ w_n \end{pmatrix} = \sum_{i=1}^n \bar{v}_i w_i$$

In this case, we do not have symmetric property  $F(\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}) = F(\mathbf{w}, \mathbf{v})$  any more, instead, we have the conjugate symmetric property  $F(\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}) = \overline{F(\mathbf{w}, \mathbf{v})}$ . ■

**Definition 10.2** [Inner Product] A real (complex) vector space  $V$  with a bilinear (sesquilinear) form with symmetric (conjugate symmetric) and positive definite property is called an **inner product** on  $V$ . Any vector space equipped with inner product is called an **inner product space**. ■

**Notation.** We write  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$  instead of  $F(\cdot, \cdot)$  to denote inner product.

■ **Definition 10.3** [Norm] The **norm** of a vector  $\mathbf{v}$  is  $\|\mathbf{v}\| = \sqrt{\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v} \rangle}$ . ■

Ⓡ As a result,  $\|\alpha \mathbf{v}\| = \sqrt{\langle \alpha \mathbf{v}, \alpha \mathbf{v} \rangle} = \sqrt{\bar{\alpha} \alpha \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v} \rangle} = \sqrt{|\alpha|^2 \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v} \rangle} = |\alpha| \|\mathbf{v}\|$ .



The norm is well-defined since  $\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v} \rangle \geq 0$  (positive definiteness of inner product).

**Definition 10.4** [Orthogonal] We say a family of vectors  $S = \{\mathbf{v}_i \mid i \in I\}$  is **orthogonal** if

$$\langle \mathbf{v}_i, \mathbf{v}_j \rangle = 0, \forall i \neq j$$

If furthermore  $\langle \mathbf{v}_i, \mathbf{v}_i \rangle = 1, \forall i$ , then we say  $S$  is an **orthonormal** set. ■



1. The Cauchy-Scharwz inequality holds for inner product space:

$$|\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v} \rangle| \leq \|\mathbf{u}\| \|\mathbf{v}\|, \forall \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v} \in V.$$

*Proof.* The proof for  $\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v} \rangle \in \mathbb{R}$  is the same as in MAT2040 course. Check Theorem (6.1) in the note

<https://walterbabyrudin.github.io/information/Notes/MAT2040.pdf>

However, for  $\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v} \rangle \in \mathbb{C} \setminus \mathbb{R}$ , we need the re-scaling technique:

Let  $\mathbf{w} = \frac{1}{\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v} \rangle} \mathbf{u}$ , then  $\langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{v} \rangle \in \mathbb{R}$ :

$$\langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{v} \rangle = \left\langle \frac{1}{\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v} \rangle} \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v} \right\rangle = \overline{\left( \frac{1}{\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v} \rangle} \right)} \langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v} \rangle = \frac{1}{\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v} \rangle} \langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v} \rangle = 1.$$

Applying the Cauchy-Scharwz inequality for  $\langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{v} \rangle \in \mathbb{R}$  gives

$$\begin{aligned} \left| \left\langle \frac{1}{\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v} \rangle} \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v} \right\rangle \right| &= |\langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{v} \rangle| \\ &\leq \|\mathbf{w}\| \|\mathbf{v}\| = \left\| \frac{1}{\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v} \rangle} \mathbf{u} \right\| \|\mathbf{v}\| \end{aligned}$$

Or equivalently,

$$\left| \frac{1}{\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v} \rangle} \right| |\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v} \rangle| \leq \left| \frac{1}{\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v} \rangle} \right| \|\mathbf{u}\| \|\mathbf{v}\|$$

Since  $\left| \frac{1}{\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v} \rangle} \right| = \left| \frac{1}{\overline{\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v} \rangle}} \right|$ , we imply

$$|\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v} \rangle| \leq \|\mathbf{u}\| \|\mathbf{v}\|$$

■

2. The triangle inequality also holds for inner product process:

$$\|\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}\| \leq \|\mathbf{u}\| + \|\mathbf{v}\|$$

3. The Gram-Schmidt process holds for finite set of vectors: let  $S = \{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_n\}$  be (finite) linearly independent. Then we can construct an orthonormal set from  $S$ :

$$\mathbf{w}_1 = \mathbf{v}_1, \quad \mathbf{w}_{i+1} = \mathbf{v}_{i+1} - \frac{\langle \mathbf{v}_{i+1}, \mathbf{w}_1 \rangle}{\|\mathbf{w}_1\|^2} \mathbf{w}_1 - \frac{\langle \mathbf{v}_{i+1}, \mathbf{w}_2 \rangle}{\|\mathbf{w}_2\|^2} \mathbf{w}_2 - \dots - \frac{\langle \mathbf{v}_{i+1}, \mathbf{w}_i \rangle}{\|\mathbf{w}_i\|^2} \mathbf{w}_i, \quad i = 1, \dots, n-1$$

Then after normalization, we obtain the constructed orthonormal set.

Consequently, every finite dimensional inner product space has an orthonormal basis.

## 10.1.2. Dual spaces

**Theorem 10.1 — Riesz Representation.** Consider the mapping

$$\phi : \quad V \rightarrow V^*$$

$$\text{with} \quad \mathbf{v} \mapsto \phi_{\mathbf{v}}$$

$$\text{where} \quad \phi_{\mathbf{v}}(\mathbf{w}) = \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle, \quad \forall \mathbf{w} \in V$$

Then the mapping  $\phi$  is well-defined and it is an  $\mathbb{R}$ -linear transformation.

Moreover, if  $V$  is finite dimensional, then  $\phi$  is an isomorphism.

The  $\mathbb{R}$ -linear transformation  $V \rightarrow V^*$  means that, when  $V, V^*$  are vector space over  $\mathbb{R}$ , the  $\mathbb{R}$ -linear transformation deduces into exactly the linear transformation.

- Ⓡ The  $\mathbb{R}$ -linear transformation  $V \rightarrow V^*$  is **not** necessarily linear if  $V, V^*$  are vector spaces over  $\mathbb{C}$ .

However, we can transform a vector space over  $\mathbb{C}$  into a vector space over  $\mathbb{R}$ :

- For example, suppose that  $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_n\}$  is a basis of  $V$  over  $\mathbb{C}$ , i.e.,

$$\mathbf{v} = \sum_{j=1}^n \alpha_j \mathbf{v}_j$$

where  $\alpha_j = p_j + iq_j, \forall p_j, q_j \in \mathbb{R}$ , then

$$\mathbf{v} = \sum_j p_j \mathbf{v}_j + \sum_j q_j (i\mathbf{v}_j), \quad p_j, q_j \in \mathbb{R}$$

Therefore,  $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_n, i\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, i\mathbf{v}_n\}$  forms a basis of  $V$  over  $\mathbb{R}$ .

Note that  $i\mathbf{v}_1$  cannot be considered as a linear combination of  $\mathbf{v}_1$  over  $\mathbb{R}$ , but a linear combination of  $\mathbf{v}_1$  over  $\mathbb{C}$ .

In particular, if  $\phi : V \rightarrow V^*$  is a  $\mathbb{R}$ -linear transformation, then

$$\phi(i\mathbf{v}) \neq i\phi(\mathbf{v}), \text{ but } \phi(2\mathbf{v}) = 2\phi(\mathbf{v}).$$

*Proof.* 1. Well-definedness: We need to show  $\phi_{\mathbf{v}} \in V^*$ , i.e., for scalars  $a, b$ ,

$$\phi_{\mathbf{v}}(a\mathbf{w}_1 + b\mathbf{w}_2) = \langle \mathbf{v}, a\mathbf{w}_1 + b\mathbf{w}_2 \rangle = a\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}_1 \rangle + b\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}_2 \rangle = a\phi_{\mathbf{v}}(\mathbf{w}_1) + b\phi_{\mathbf{v}}(\mathbf{w}_2)$$

Therefore,  $\phi_{\mathbf{v}} \in V^*$ .

2.  $\mathbb{R}$ -linearity of  $\phi$ : it suffices to show

$$\phi(c\mathbf{v}_1 + d\mathbf{v}_2) = c\phi(\mathbf{v}_1) + d\phi(\mathbf{v}_2), \quad \forall c, d \in \mathbb{R}, \mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2 \in V.$$

For all  $\mathbf{w} \in V$ , we have

$$\phi_{c\mathbf{v}_1 + d\mathbf{v}_2}(\mathbf{w}) = \langle c\mathbf{v}_1 + d\mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{w} \rangle = c\langle \mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{w} \rangle + d\langle \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{w} \rangle = c\phi_{\mathbf{v}_1}(\mathbf{w}) + d\phi_{\mathbf{v}_2}(\mathbf{w})$$

where the second equality holds because  $c, d \in \mathbb{R}$ .

Therefore,

$$\phi(c\mathbf{v}_1 + d\mathbf{v}_2) = c\phi(\mathbf{v}_1) + d\phi(\mathbf{v}_2).$$

■

## 10.4. Wednesday for MAT3040

**Reviewing.** Consider the mapping

$$\begin{aligned}\phi : \quad & V \rightarrow V^* \\ \text{with} \quad & \phi(\mathbf{v}) = \phi_{\mathbf{v}} \\ \text{where} \quad & \phi_{\mathbf{v}}(\mathbf{w}) = \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle\end{aligned}$$

The Riesz Representation Theorem claims that

1.  $\phi$  is a  $\mathbb{R}$ -linear transformation.
2.  $\phi$  is injective.
3. If  $\dim(V) < \infty$ , then  $\phi$  is an isomorphism.

*Proof for Claim (2).* Consider the equality  $\phi(\mathbf{v}) = \phi_{\mathbf{v}} = 0_{V^*}$ , which implies

$$\phi_{\mathbf{v}}(\mathbf{w}) = \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle = 0, \forall \mathbf{w} \in V$$

By the non-degeneracy property,  $\mathbf{v} = 0_{\mathbf{v}}$ , i.e.,  $\phi$  is injective. ■

*Proof for Claim (3).* Since  $\dim_{\mathbb{R}}(V) = \dim_{\mathbb{R}}(V^*)$ , and  $\phi$  is injective as a  $\mathbb{R}$ -linear transformation, we imply  $\phi$  is an isomorphism from  $V$  to  $V^*$ , where  $V, V^*$  are treated as vector spaces over  $\mathbb{R}$ . ■

### 10.4.1. Orthogonal Complement

**Definition 10.5** [Orthogonal Complement] Let  $U \leq V$  be a subspace of an inner product space. Then the **orthogonal complement** of  $U$  is

$$U^{\perp} = \{\mathbf{v} \in V \mid \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{u} \rangle = 0, \forall \mathbf{u} \in U\}$$

The analysis for orthogonal complement for vector spaces over  $\mathbb{C}$  is quite similar as what we have studied in MAT2040.

**Proposition 10.7** 1.  $U^\perp$  is a subspace of  $V$

2.  $U \cap U^\perp = \{0\}$
3.  $U_1 \subseteq U_2$  implies  $U_2^\perp \subseteq U_1^\perp$ .

*Proof.* 1. Suppose that  $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2 \in U^\perp$ , where  $a, b \in K$  ( $K = \mathbb{C}$  or  $\mathbb{R}$ ), then for all  $\mathbf{u} \in U$ ,

$$\begin{aligned}\langle a\mathbf{v}_1 + b\mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{u} \rangle &= \bar{a}\langle \mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{u} \rangle + \bar{b}\langle \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{u} \rangle \\ &= \bar{a} \cdot 0 + \bar{b} \cdot 0 = 0\end{aligned}$$

Therefore,  $a\mathbf{v}_1 + b\mathbf{v}_2 \in U^\perp$ .

2. Suppose that  $\mathbf{u} \in U \cap U^\perp$ , then we imply  $\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{u} \rangle = 0$ . By the positive-definiteness of inner product,  $\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{0}$ .
3. The statement (3) is easy.

■

**Proposition 10.8** 1. If  $\dim(V) < \infty$  and  $U \leq V$ , then  $V = U \oplus U^\perp$

2. If  $U, W \leq V$ , then

$$\begin{aligned}(U + W)^\perp &= U^\perp \cap W^\perp \\ (U \cap W)^\perp &\supseteq U^\perp + W^\perp \\ (U^\perp)^\perp &\supseteq U\end{aligned}$$

Moreover, if  $\dim(V) < \infty$ , then these are equalities.

*Proof.* 1. Suppose that  $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_k\}$  forms a basis for  $U$ , and by basis extension, we obtain  $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_k, \mathbf{v}_{k+1}, \dots, \mathbf{v}_n\}$  is a basis for  $V$ .

By Gram-Schmidt Process, any finite basis induces an orthonormal basis.

Therefore, suppose that  $\{\mathbf{e}_1, \dots, \mathbf{e}_k\}$  forms an orthonormal basis for  $U$ , and  $\{\mathbf{e}_{k+1}, \dots, \mathbf{e}_n\}$  forms an orthonormal basis for  $U^\perp$ .

It's easy to show  $V = U + U^\perp$  using orthonormal basis.

2. (a) The reverse part  $(U + W)^\perp \supseteq U^\perp \cap W^\perp$  is trivial; for the forward part, suppose

$\mathbf{v} \in (U + W)^\perp$ , then

$$\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{u} + \mathbf{w} \rangle = 0, \forall \mathbf{u} \in U, \mathbf{w} \in W$$

Taking  $\mathbf{u} \equiv \mathbf{0}$  in the equality above gives  $\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle = 0$ , i.e.,  $\mathbf{v} \in U^\perp$ . Similarly,  $\mathbf{v} \in W^\perp$ .

- (b) Follow the similar argument as in (2a). If  $\dim(V) < \infty$ , then write down the orthonormal basis for  $U^\perp + W^\perp$  and  $(U \cap W)^\perp$ .
- (c) Follow the similar argument as in (2a). If  $\dim(V) < \infty$ , then

$$V = U^\perp \oplus (U^\perp)^\perp = U \oplus U^\perp.$$

Therefore,  $(U^\perp)^\perp = U$ .

■

**Proposition 10.9** The mapping  $\phi : V \rightarrow V^*$  maps  $U^\perp \leq V$  injectively to  $\text{Ann}(U) \leq V^*$ . If  $\dim(V) < \infty$ , then  $U^\perp \cong \text{Ann}(U)$  as  $\mathbb{R}$ -vector spaces

*Proof.* The injectivity of  $\phi$  has been shown at the beginning of this lecture. For any  $\mathbf{v} \in U^\perp$ , we imply  $\phi_{\mathbf{v}}(\mathbf{u}) = 0, \forall \mathbf{u} \in U$ , i.e.,  $\phi_{\mathbf{v}} \in \text{Ann}(U)$ .

Therefore,  $\phi(U^\perp) \leq \text{Ann}(U)$ .

Provided that  $\dim(V) < \infty$ , by (1) in proposition (10.8),

$$\dim(U) + \dim(U^\perp) = \dim(V)$$

Since  $\dim(U) + \dim(\text{Ann}(U)) = \dim(V)$ , we imply  $\dim(U^\perp) = \dim(\text{Ann}(U))$ .

Moreover,

$$\phi : U^\perp \rightarrow \text{Ann}(U)$$

is an isomorphism between  $\mathbb{R}$ -vector spaces  $U^\perp$  and  $\text{Ann}(U)$ .

■

## 10.4.2. Adjoint Map

**Motivation.** Then we study the induced mapping based on a given linear operator  $T$ , denoted as  $T'$ . This induced mapping essentially plays the similar role as taking the Hermitian for a complex matrix.

**Notation.** Previously we have studied the **adjoint** of  $T : V \rightarrow W$ , denoted as  $T^* : W^* \rightarrow V^*$ . However, from now on, we use the same terminology but with different meaning. If  $T : V \rightarrow V$  is a linear operator, then the **adjoint** of  $T$  is the linear operator  $T' : V \rightarrow V$  defined as follows.

**Definition 10.6** [Adjoint] Let  $T : V \rightarrow V$  be a linear operator between inner product spaces. The **adjoint** of  $T$  is defined as  $T' : V \rightarrow V$  satisfying

$$\langle T'(\mathbf{v}), \mathbf{w} \rangle = \langle \mathbf{v}, T(\mathbf{w}) \rangle, \quad \forall \mathbf{w} \in V \quad (10.1)$$

**Proposition 10.10** If  $\dim(V) < \infty$ , then  $T'$  exists, and it is unique. Moreover,  $T'$  is a linear map.

*Proof.* Fix any  $\mathbf{v} \in V$ . Consider the mapping

$$\alpha_{\mathbf{v}} : \mathbf{w} \xrightarrow{T} T(\mathbf{w}) \xrightarrow{\phi_{\mathbf{v}}} \langle \mathbf{v}, T(\mathbf{w}) \rangle$$

This is a linear transformation from  $V$  to  $\mathbb{F}$ , i.e.,  $\alpha_{\mathbf{v}} \in V^*$

By Riesz representation theorem,  $\phi$  is an isomorphism from  $V$  to  $V^*$ . Therefore, for any  $\alpha_{\mathbf{v}} \in V^*$ , there exists a vector  $T'(\mathbf{v}) \in V$  such that

$$\phi(T'(\mathbf{v})) = \alpha_{\mathbf{v}} \in V^*$$

Or equivalently,  $\phi_{T'(\mathbf{v})}(\mathbf{w}) = \alpha_{\mathbf{v}}(\mathbf{w}), \forall \mathbf{w} \in V$ , i.e.,  $\langle T'(\mathbf{v}), \mathbf{w} \rangle = \langle \mathbf{v}, T(\mathbf{w}) \rangle$ .

Therefore, from  $\mathbf{v}$  we have constructed  $T'(\mathbf{v})$  satisfying (10.1). Now define  $T' : V \rightarrow V$  by  $\mathbf{v} \mapsto T'(\mathbf{v})$ .



- Since the choice of  $T'(\mathbf{v})$  is unique by the injectivity of  $\phi$ ,  $T'$  is well-defined.
- Now we show  $T'$  is a linear transformation: Let  $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2 \in V, a, b \in K$ . For all  $\mathbf{w} \in V$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned}
 \langle T'(a\mathbf{v}_1 + b\mathbf{v}_2), \mathbf{w} \rangle &= \langle a\mathbf{v}_1 + b\mathbf{v}_2, T(\mathbf{w}) \rangle \\
 &= \bar{a}\langle \mathbf{v}_1, T(\mathbf{w}) \rangle + \bar{b}\langle \mathbf{v}_2, T(\mathbf{w}) \rangle \\
 &= \bar{a}\langle T'(\mathbf{v}_1), \mathbf{w} \rangle + \bar{b}\langle T'(\mathbf{v}_2), \mathbf{w} \rangle \\
 &= \langle aT'(\mathbf{v}_1) + bT'(\mathbf{v}_2), \mathbf{w} \rangle
 \end{aligned}$$

Therefore,

$$\langle T'(a\mathbf{v}_1 + b\mathbf{v}_2) - [aT'(\mathbf{v}_1) + bT'(\mathbf{v}_2)], \mathbf{w} \rangle = 0, \forall \mathbf{w} \in V$$

By the non-degeneracy of inner product,

$$T'(a\mathbf{v}_1 + b\mathbf{v}_2) - [aT'(\mathbf{v}_1) + bT'(\mathbf{v}_2)] = \mathbf{0},$$

$$\text{i.e., } T'(a\mathbf{v}_1 + b\mathbf{v}_2) = aT'(\mathbf{v}_1) + bT'(\mathbf{v}_2)$$

■

■ **Example 10.2** Let  $V = \mathbb{R}^n$ ,  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$  as the usual inner product. Consider the matrix-multiplication mapping

$$T: V \rightarrow V$$

$$T(\mathbf{v}) = A\mathbf{v}$$

Then  $\langle T'(\mathbf{v}), \mathbf{w} \rangle = \langle \mathbf{v}, T(\mathbf{w}) \rangle$  implies

$$\begin{aligned}
 (T'(\mathbf{v}))^T \mathbf{w} &= \langle \mathbf{v}, A\mathbf{w} \rangle \\
 &= \mathbf{v}^T A\mathbf{w} \\
 &= (A^T \mathbf{v})^T \mathbf{w}
 \end{aligned}$$

Therefore,  $T'(\mathbf{v}) = A^T \mathbf{v}$ .

■

**Proposition 10.11** Let  $T : V \rightarrow V$  be a linear transformation,  $V$  a inner product space.

Suppose that  $\mathcal{B} = \{\mathbf{e}_1, \dots, \mathbf{e}_n\}$  is an orthonormal basis of  $V$ , then

$$(T')_{\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{B}} = \overline{((T)_{\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{B}})^T}$$

*Proof.* Suppose that  $(T)_{\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{B}} = (a_{ij})$ , where  $T(\mathbf{e}_j) = \sum_{k=1}^n a_{kj} \mathbf{e}_k$ , then

$$\begin{aligned} \langle \mathbf{e}_i, T(\mathbf{e}_j) \rangle &= \langle \mathbf{e}_i, \sum_{k=1}^n a_{kj} \mathbf{e}_k \rangle \\ &= \sum_{k=1}^n a_{kj} \langle \mathbf{e}_i, \mathbf{e}_k \rangle \\ &= a_{ij} \end{aligned}$$

Also, suppose  $(T')_{\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{B}} = (b_{ij})$ , we imply  $T'(\mathbf{e}_j) = \sum_{k=1}^n b_{kj} \mathbf{e}_k$ , which follows that

$$\langle \mathbf{e}_i, T'(\mathbf{e}_j) \rangle = b_{ij} \implies \overline{\langle T'(\mathbf{e}_j), \mathbf{e}_i \rangle} = b_{ij} \implies \overline{\langle \mathbf{e}_j, T(\mathbf{e}_i) \rangle} = b_{ij},$$

i.e.,  $\overline{a_{ji}} = b_{ij}$ . ■

**R** Proposition (10.11) does not hold if  $\mathcal{B}$  is not an orthonormal basis.

# Chapter 11

## Week11

### 11.1. Monday for MAT3040

**Reviewing.** Adjoint Operator:  $\langle T'(\mathbf{v}), \mathbf{w} \rangle = \langle \mathbf{v}, T(\mathbf{w}) \rangle$ .

#### 11.1.1. Self-Adjoint Operator

**Definition 11.1** [Self-Adjoint] Let  $V$  be an inner product space and  $T : V \rightarrow V$  be a linear operator. Then  $T$  is **self-adjoint** if  $T' = T$ . ■

■ **Example 11.1** Let  $V = \mathbb{C}^n$ , and  $\mathcal{B} = \{\mathbf{e}_1, \dots, \mathbf{e}_n\}$  be a orthonormal basis. Let  $T : V \rightarrow V$  be given by

$$T(\mathbf{v}) = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{v}, \quad \text{where } \mathbf{A} \in M_{n \times n}(\mathbb{C}).$$

Or equivalently, there exists basis  $\mathcal{B}$  such that  $(T)_{\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{B}} = \mathbf{A}$ .

In such case,  $T$  is self-adjoint if and only if  $(T')_{\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{B}} = (T)_{\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{B}}$ , i.e.,  $\overline{(T)_{\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{B}}^T} = (T)_{\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{B}}$ , i.e.,  $\mathbf{A}^H = \mathbf{A}$ .

Therefore,  $T(\mathbf{v}) = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{v}$  is self-adjoint if and only if  $\mathbf{A}^H = \mathbf{A}$ .

Moreover, if  $\mathbb{C}$  is replaced by  $\mathbb{R}$ , then  $T$  is self-adjoint if and only if  $\mathbf{A}$  is symmetric. ■

**R** The notion of self-adjoint for linear operator is essentially the generalized notion of Hermitian for matrix that we have studied in MAT2040.

We also have some nice properties for self-adjoint, and the proof for which are essentially the same for the proof in the case of Hermitian matrices.

**Proposition 11.1** If  $\lambda$  is an eigenvalue of a self-adjoint operator  $T$ , then  $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}$ .

*Proof.* Suppose there is an eigen-pair  $(\lambda, \mathbf{w})$  for  $\mathbf{w} \neq \mathbf{0}$ , then

$$\begin{aligned}\lambda \langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{w} \rangle &= \langle \mathbf{w}, \lambda \mathbf{w} \rangle \\ &= \langle \mathbf{w}, T(\mathbf{w}) \rangle = \langle T'(\mathbf{w}), \mathbf{w} \rangle \\ &= \langle T(\mathbf{w}), \mathbf{w} \rangle = \langle \lambda \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{w} \rangle \\ &= \bar{\lambda} \langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{w} \rangle\end{aligned}$$

Since  $\langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{w} \rangle \neq 0$  by non-degeneracy property, we have  $\lambda = \bar{\lambda}$ , i.e.,  $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}$ . ■

**Proposition 11.2** If  $U \leq V$  is  $T$ -invariant over the self-adjoint operator  $T$ , then so is  $U^\perp$ .

*Proof.* It suffices to show  $T(\mathbf{v}) \in U^\perp, \forall \mathbf{v} \in U^\perp$ , i.e., for any  $\mathbf{u} \in U$ , check that

$$\langle \mathbf{u}, T(\mathbf{v}) \rangle = \langle T'(\mathbf{u}), \mathbf{v} \rangle = \langle T(\mathbf{u}), \mathbf{v} \rangle = 0,$$

where the last equality is because that  $T(\mathbf{u}) \in U$  and  $\mathbf{v} \in U^\perp$ . Therefore,  $T(\mathbf{v}) \in U^\perp$ . ■

**Theorem 11.1** If  $T : V \rightarrow V$  is self-adjoint, and  $\dim(V) < \infty$ , then there exists an orthonormal basis of eigenvectors of  $T$ , i.e., an orthonormal basis of  $V$  such that any element from this basis is an eigenvector of  $T$ .

*Proof.* We use the induction on  $\dim(V)$ :

- The result is trivial for  $\dim(V) = 1$ .
- Suppose that this theorem holds for all vector spaces  $V$  with  $\dim(V) \leq k$ , then we want to show the theorem holds when  $\dim(V) = k + 1$ :

Suppose that  $T : V \rightarrow V$  is self-adjoint with  $\dim(V) = k + 1$ , then consider

$$\chi_T(x) = x^{k+1} + \cdots + a_1 x + a_0, \quad a_i \in \mathbb{K}, \text{ where } \mathbb{K} \text{ denotes } \mathbb{R} \text{ or } \mathbb{C}.$$

- If  $\mathbb{K} = \mathbb{C}$ , then  $\mathcal{X}_T(x)$  can be decomposed as

$$\mathcal{X}_T(x) = (x - \lambda_1) \cdots (x - \lambda_{k+1})$$

In particular, we obtain the eigen-pair  $(\lambda_1, \mathbf{v})$

- If  $\mathbb{K} = \mathbb{R}$ , i.e., we treat real number as scalars, then

$$\mathcal{X}_T(x) = (x - \lambda_1) \cdots (x - \lambda_{k+1}), \text{ where } \lambda_i \in \mathbb{C}.$$

By proposition (11.1), we imply all  $\lambda_i$ 's are in  $\mathbb{R}$ . Moreover, we also obtain the eigen-pair  $(\lambda_1, \mathbf{v})$

Consider  $U = \text{span}\{\mathbf{v}\}$ , then

- $U$  is  $T$ -invariant
- $V = U \oplus U^\perp$ , since  $V$  is finite dimensional
- $U^\perp$  is  $T$ -invariant.

Consider  $T|_{U^\perp}$ , which is a self-adjoint operator on  $U^\perp$ , with  $\dim(U^\perp) = k$ .

By induction, there exists an orthonormal basis  $\{\mathbf{e}_2, \dots, \mathbf{e}_{k+1}\}$  of eigenvectors of  $T|_{U^\perp}$ .

Consider the basis  $\mathcal{B} = \{\mathbf{v}' = \mathbf{v}/\|\mathbf{v}\|, \mathbf{e}_2, \dots, \mathbf{e}_{k+1}\}$ . As a result,

1.  $\mathcal{B}$  forms a basis of  $V$
2. All  $\mathbf{v}', \mathbf{e}_i$  are of norm 1 eigenvectors of  $T$ .
3.  $\mathcal{B}$  is an orthonormal set, e.g.,  $\langle \mathbf{v}', \mathbf{e}_i \rangle = 0$ , where  $\mathbf{v}' \in U$  and  $\mathbf{e}_i \in U^\perp$ .

Therefore,  $\mathcal{B}$  is a basis of orthonormal eigenvectors of  $V$ .

■

**Corollary 11.1** If  $\dim(V) < \infty$ , and  $T : V \rightarrow V$  is self-adjoint, then there exists orthonormal basis  $\mathcal{B}$  such that

$$(T)_{\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{B}} = \text{diag}(\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_n)$$

In particular, for all real symmetric matrix  $\mathbf{A} \in \mathbb{S}^n$ , there exists orthogonal matrix  $P$  ( $P^T P = \mathbf{I}_n$ ) such that

$$P^{-1}AP = \text{diag}(\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_n)$$

*Proof.* 1. By applying theorem (11.1), there exists orthonormal basis of  $V$ , say  $\mathcal{B} = \{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_n\}$  such that  $T(\mathbf{v}_i) = \lambda_i \mathbf{v}_i$ . Directly writing the basis representation gives

$$(T)_{\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{B}} = \text{diag}(\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_n).$$

2. For the second part, consider  $T : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$  by  $T(\mathbf{v}) = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{v}$ . Since  $\mathbf{A}^T = \mathbf{A}$ , we imply  $T$  is self-adjoint. There exists orthonormal basis  $\mathcal{B} = \{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_n\}$  such that

$$(T)_{\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{B}} = \text{diag}(\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_n).$$

In particular, if  $\mathcal{A} = \{\mathbf{e}_1, \dots, \mathbf{e}_n\}$ , then  $(T)_{\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{A}} = \mathbf{A}$ . We construct  $P := C_{\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{B}}$ , which is the change of basis matrix from  $\mathcal{B}$  to  $\mathcal{A}$ , then

$$P = \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{v}_1 & \cdots & \mathbf{v}_n \end{pmatrix}$$

and

$$P^{-1}(T)_{\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{A}}P = (T)_{\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{B}}$$

Or equivalently,  $P^{-1}AP = \text{diag}(\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_n)$ , with

$$P^T P = \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{v}_1^T \\ \vdots \\ \mathbf{v}_n^T \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{v}_1 & \cdots & \mathbf{v}_n \end{pmatrix} = \mathbf{I}$$

■

## 11.1.2. Orthonormal/Unitary Operators

**Definition 11.2** A linear operator  $T : V \rightarrow V$  over  $\mathbb{K}$  with  $\langle T(\mathbf{w}), T(\mathbf{v}) \rangle = \langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{v} \rangle, \forall \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \in V$ , is called

1. **Orthogonal** if  $\mathbb{K} = \mathbb{R}$
2. **Unitary** if  $\mathbb{K} = \mathbb{C}$

**Proposition 11.3**  $T$  is orthogonal / unitary if and only if  $T' \circ T = I$

*Proof.* The reverse direction is by directly checking that

$$\langle T(\mathbf{w}), T(\mathbf{v}) \rangle = \langle T' \circ T(\mathbf{w}), \mathbf{v} \rangle = \langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{v} \rangle$$

The forward direction is by checking  $T' \circ T(\mathbf{w}) = \mathbf{w}, \forall \mathbf{w} \in V$ :

$$\langle T' \circ T(\mathbf{w}), \mathbf{v} \rangle = \langle T(\mathbf{w}), T(\mathbf{v}) \rangle = \langle \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{v} \rangle \implies \langle T' \circ T(\mathbf{w}) - \mathbf{w}, \mathbf{v} \rangle = 0, \forall \mathbf{v} \in V$$

By non-degeneracy,  $T' \circ T(\mathbf{w}) - \mathbf{w} = 0$ , i.e.,  $T' \circ T(\mathbf{w}) = \mathbf{w}, \forall \mathbf{w} \in V$ . ■

■ **Example 11.2** Let  $T : \mathbb{K}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{K}^n$  be given by  $T(\mathbf{v}) = A\mathbf{v}$ . Then  $T$  is orthogonal implies  $(T')_{\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{B}}(T)_{\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{B}} = I$ .

(Orthogonal) When  $\mathbb{K} = \mathbb{R}$ , then  $A^T A = I$

(Unitary) When  $\mathbb{K} = \mathbb{C}$ , then  $A^H A = I$ . ■

**Definition 11.3** [Orthogonal/Unitary Group]

Orthogonal Group :  $O(n, \mathbb{R}) = \{A \in M_{n \times n}(\mathbb{R}) \mid A^T A = I\}$

Unitary Group :  $U(n, \mathbb{C}) = \{A \in M_{n \times n}(\mathbb{C}) \mid A^H A = I\}$  ■

## 11.4. Wednesday for MAT3040

**Reviewing.** Unitary Operators

$$\langle T\mathbf{v}, T\mathbf{w} \rangle = \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle, \quad \forall \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \in V.$$

### 11.4.1. Unitary Operator

■ **Example 11.8** Let  $V = \mathbb{R}^n$  with usual inner product. For the linear operator  $T(\mathbf{v}) = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{v}$ ,  $T$  is orthogonal if and only if  $\mathbf{A}^T \mathbf{A} = \mathbf{I}$ .

Let  $V = \mathbb{C}^n$  with usual inner product. For the linear operator  $T(\mathbf{v}) = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{v}$ ,  $T$  is unitary if and only if  $\mathbf{A}^H \mathbf{A} = \mathbf{I}$ . ■

**Proposition 11.8** Let  $T : V \rightarrow V$  be a linear operator on a vector space over  $\mathbb{K}$  satisfying  $T'T = I$ . Then for all eigenvalues  $\lambda$  of  $T$ , we have  $|\lambda| = 1$ .

*Proof.* Suppose we have the eigen-pair  $(\lambda, \mathbf{v})$ , then

$$\begin{aligned} \langle T\mathbf{v}, T\mathbf{v} \rangle &= \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v} \rangle \\ \iff \langle \lambda\mathbf{v}, \lambda\mathbf{v} \rangle &= \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v} \rangle \\ \iff \bar{\lambda}\lambda \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v} \rangle &= \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v} \rangle \end{aligned}$$

Since  $\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v} \rangle \neq 0$  ( $\mathbf{v} \neq \mathbf{0}$ ), we imply  $|\lambda|^2 = 1$ , i.e.,  $|\lambda| = 1$ . ■

**Proposition 11.9** Let  $T : V \rightarrow V$  be an operator on a finite dimension  $V$  over  $\mathbb{K}$  satisfying  $T'T = I$ . If  $U \leq V$  is  $T$ -invariant, then  $U$  is also  $T^{-1}$ -invariant.

*Proof.* Since  $T'T = I$ , i.e.,  $T$  is invertible, we imply 0 is not a root of  $\chi_T(x)$ , i.e., 0 is not a root of  $m_T(x)$ . Since  $m_T(0) \neq 0$ ,  $m_T(x)$  has the form

$$m_T(x) = x^m + \cdots + a_1x + a_0, \quad a_0 \neq 0,$$



which follows that

$$m_T(T) = T^m + \cdots + a_0 I = 0 \implies T(T^{m-1} + \cdots + a_1 I) = -a_0 I$$

Or equivalently,

$$T \left( -\frac{1}{a_0} (T^{m-1} + \cdots + a_1 I) \right) = I$$

Therefore,

$$T^{-1} = -\frac{1}{a_0} T^{m-1} - \cdots - \frac{a_2}{a_0} T - \frac{a_1}{a_0} I,$$

i.e., the inverse  $T^{-1}$  can be expressed as a polynomial involving  $T$  only.

Since  $U$  is  $T$ -invariant, we imply  $U$  is  $T^m$ -invariant for  $m \in \mathbb{N}$ , and therefore  $U$  is  $T^{-1}$ -invariant since  $T^{-1}$  is a polynomial of  $T$ . ■

**Proposition 11.10** Let  $T : V \rightarrow V$  satisfies  $T'T = I$  ( $\dim(V) < \infty$ ), then  $U \leq V$  is  $T$ -invariant implies  $U^\perp$  is  $T$ -invariant.

*Proof.* Let  $v \in U^\perp$ , it suffices to show  $T(v) \in U^\perp$ .

For all  $u \in U$ , we have

$$\langle u, T(v) \rangle = \langle T'(u), v \rangle = \langle T^{-1}(u), v \rangle$$

Since  $U$  is  $T^{-1}$ -invariant, we imply  $T^{-1}(u) \in U$ , and therefore

$$\langle u, T(v) \rangle = \langle T^{-1}(u), v \rangle = 0 \implies T(v) \in U^\perp.$$

■

**Theorem 11.2** Let  $T : V \rightarrow V$  be a unitary operator on finite dimension  $V$  (over  $\mathbb{C}$ ), then there exists an orthonormal basis  $\mathcal{A}$  such that

$$(T)_{\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{A}} = \text{diag}(\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_n), \quad |\lambda_i| = 1, \quad \forall i.$$

*Proof Outline.* Note that  $\chi_T(x)$  always admits a root in  $\mathbb{C}$ , so we can always find an

eigenvector  $\mathbf{v} \in V$  of  $T$ .

Then the theorem follows by the same argument before on self-adjoint operators.

- Consider  $U = \text{span}\{\mathbf{v}\}$
- $V = U \oplus U^\perp$  and  $U^\perp$  is  $T$ -invariant
- Use induction on the unitary operator  $T|_{U^\perp}: U^\perp \rightarrow U^\perp$

■

R

- The argument fails for orthogonal operators

$$\begin{aligned} T &: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^2, \\ \text{with } T(\mathbf{v}) &= \mathbf{A}\mathbf{v} \\ \text{where } \mathbf{A} &= \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta & -\sin \theta \\ \sin \theta & \cos \theta \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

The matrix  $\mathbf{A}$  is not diagonalizable over  $\mathbb{R}$ . It has no real eigenvalues.

However, if we treat  $\mathbf{A}$  as  $T: \mathbb{C}^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{C}^2$  with  $T(\mathbf{v}) = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{v}$ , then  $\mathbf{A}^H \mathbf{A} = \mathbf{I}$ , and therefore  $T$  is unitary. Then  $\mathbf{A}$  is diagonalizable over  $\mathbb{C}$  with eigenvalues  $e^{i\theta}, e^{-i\theta}$

- As a corollary of the theorem, for all  $\mathbf{A} \in M_{n \times n}(\mathbb{C})$  satisfying  $\mathbf{A}^H \mathbf{A} = \mathbf{I}$ , there exists  $P \in M_{n \times n}(\mathbb{C})$  such that

$$P^{-1} \mathbf{A} P = \text{diag}(\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_n), \quad |\lambda_i| = 1,$$

where  $P = (\mathbf{u}_1, \dots, \mathbf{u}_n)$ , with  $\{\mathbf{u}_1, \dots, \mathbf{u}_n\}$  forming orthonormal basis of  $\mathbb{C}^n$ .

In fact,

$$P^H P = \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{u}_1^H \\ \vdots \\ \mathbf{u}_n^H \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{u}_1 & \cdots & \mathbf{u}_n \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \langle \mathbf{u}_1, \mathbf{u}_1 \rangle & \cdots & \langle \mathbf{u}_1, \mathbf{u}_n \rangle \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ \langle \mathbf{u}_n, \mathbf{u}_1 \rangle & \cdots & \langle \mathbf{u}_n, \mathbf{u}_n \rangle \end{pmatrix}$$

Conclusion: all matrices  $\mathbf{A} \in M_{n \times n}(\mathbb{C})$  with  $\mathbf{A}^H \mathbf{A} = \mathbf{I}$  can be written as

$$\mathbf{A} = \mathbf{P}^{-1} \text{diag}(\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_n) \mathbf{P},$$

with some  $\mathbf{P}$  satisfying  $\mathbf{P}^H \mathbf{P} = \mathbf{I}$ .

**Notation.** Let  $U(n) = \{\mathbf{A} \in M_{n \times n}(\mathbb{C}) \mid \mathbf{A}^H \mathbf{A} = \mathbf{I}\}$  be the unitary group, then all  $\mathbf{A} \in U(n)$  can be diagonalized by

$$\mathbf{A} = \mathbf{P}^{-1} \text{diag}(\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_n) \mathbf{P}, \quad \mathbf{P} \in U(n).$$

## 11.4.2. Normal Operators

**Definition 11.10** [Normal] Let  $T : V \rightarrow V$  be a linear operator over a  $\mathbb{C}$  inner product vector space  $V$ . We say  $T$  is **normal**, if

$$T'T = TT'$$

■ **Example 11.9** • All self-adjoint operators are normal:

$$T = T' \implies TT' = T'T = T^2$$

• All (finite-dimensional) unitary operators are normal:

$$T'T = TT' = I$$

**Proposition 11.11** Let  $T$  be a normal operator on  $V$ . Then

1.  $\|T(\mathbf{v})\| = \|T'(\mathbf{v})\|, \forall \mathbf{v} \in V$ .

In particular,  $T(\mathbf{v}) = 0$  if and only if  $T'(\mathbf{v}) = 0$

2.  $(T - \lambda I)$  is also a normal operator, for any  $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$
3.  $T(\mathbf{v}) = \lambda \mathbf{v}$  if and only if  $T'(\mathbf{v}) = \bar{\lambda} \mathbf{v}$ .

*Proof.* 1.

$$\begin{aligned}
 \langle T\mathbf{v}, T\mathbf{v} \rangle &= \langle T'T\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v} \rangle \\
 &= \langle TT'\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v} \rangle \\
 &= \overline{\langle \mathbf{v}, TT'\mathbf{v} \rangle} \\
 &= \overline{\langle T'\mathbf{v}, T'\mathbf{v} \rangle} \\
 &= \langle T'\mathbf{v}, T'\mathbf{v} \rangle
 \end{aligned}$$

Therefore,  $\|T(\mathbf{v})\|^2 = \|T'(\mathbf{v})\|^2$ , i.e.,  $\|T(\mathbf{v})\| = \|T'(\mathbf{v})\|$ .

2. By hw4,  $(T - \lambda I)' = T' - \bar{\lambda}I$ . It suffices to check

$$(T - \lambda I)'(T - \lambda I) = (T - \lambda I)(T - \lambda I)',$$

Expanding both sides out gives the desired result, i.e.,

$$(T - \lambda I)'(T - \lambda I) = (T' - \bar{\lambda}I)(T - \lambda I) = T'T - \bar{\lambda}T - \lambda T' + \lambda \bar{\lambda}I$$

and

$$(T - \lambda I)(T - \lambda I)' = (T - \lambda I)(T' - \bar{\lambda}I) = TT' - \bar{\lambda}T - \lambda T' + \lambda \bar{\lambda}I$$

3. The proof for (3) will be discussed in the next lecture.

■

# Chapter 12

## Week12

### 12.1. Monday for MAT3040

#### 12.1.1. Remarks on Normal Operator

**Proposition 12.1** If  $T$  is normal, then

1.  $\|T(\mathbf{v})\| = \|T'(\mathbf{v})\|$  for any  $\mathbf{v} \in V$
2.  $(T - \lambda I)$  is normal for any  $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$
3.  $T(\mathbf{v}) = \lambda \mathbf{v}$  if and only if  $T'(\mathbf{v}) = \bar{\lambda} \mathbf{v}$
4. If  $T(\mathbf{v}) = \lambda \mathbf{v}$  and  $T(\mathbf{w}) = \mu \mathbf{w}$  with  $\lambda \neq \mu$ , then  $\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle = 0$ .

*Proof.* (3) • For the forward direction, if  $(T - \lambda I)\mathbf{v} = 0$ , then by part (2),  $(T - \lambda I)$  is normal, which follows that

$$\|(T - \lambda I)'(\mathbf{v})\| = 0 \implies (T - \lambda I)'(\mathbf{v}) = 0 \implies T'\mathbf{v} = \bar{\lambda} \mathbf{v}.$$

- For the reverse direction, suppose that  $(T' - \bar{\lambda} I)\mathbf{v} = 0$ . Since  $T$  is normal, we imply  $T'$  is normal. Then by part (2),  $(T' - \bar{\lambda} I)$  is normal. By applying the same trick,

$$(T' - \bar{\lambda} I)' \mathbf{v} = 0 \implies ((T')' - \bar{\bar{\lambda}} I)\mathbf{v} = 0.$$

By hw4,  $(T')' = T$ . Therefore,  $(T - \lambda I)\mathbf{v} = 0$ .

(4) Observe that

$$\lambda \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle = \langle \bar{\lambda} \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle \xrightarrow{\text{by (3)}} \lambda \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle = \langle T'(\mathbf{v}), \mathbf{w} \rangle = \langle \mathbf{v}, T(\mathbf{w}) \rangle = \langle \mathbf{v}, \mu \mathbf{w} \rangle = \mu \langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle$$

Since  $\lambda \neq \mu$ , we imply  $\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle = 0$ . The proof is complete. ■

**Theorem 12.1** Let  $T$  be an operator on a finite dimensional ( $\dim(V) = n$ )  $\mathbb{C}$ -inner product vector space  $V$  satisfying  $T'T = TT'$ . Then there is an orthonormal basis of eigenvectors of  $V$ , i.e., an orthonormal basis of  $V$  such that any element from this basis is an eigenvector of  $T$ .

*Proof.* Since  $\chi_T(x)$  must have a root in  $\mathbb{C}$ , there must exist an eigen-pair  $(\mathbf{v}, \lambda)$  of  $T$ .

- Construct  $U = \text{span}\{\mathbf{v}\}$ , and it follows that

$$T\mathbf{v} = \lambda\mathbf{v} \implies U \text{ is } T\text{-invariant.}$$

$$T'\mathbf{v} = \bar{\lambda}\mathbf{v} \implies U \text{ is } T'\text{-invariant.}$$

- Moreover, we claim that  $U^\perp$  is  $T$  and  $T'$  invariant: let  $\mathbf{w} \in U^\perp$ , and for all  $\mathbf{u} \in U$ , we have

$$\langle \mathbf{u}, T(\mathbf{w}) \rangle = \langle T'(\mathbf{u}), \mathbf{w} \rangle = \langle \bar{\lambda}\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{w} \rangle = \lambda \langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{w} \rangle = 0,$$

i.e.,  $U^\perp$  is  $T$  invariant.

$$\langle \mathbf{u}, T'(\mathbf{w}) \rangle = \langle T(\mathbf{u}), \mathbf{w} \rangle = \langle \lambda\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{w} \rangle = \bar{\lambda} \langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{w} \rangle = 0,$$

which implies  $U^\perp$  is  $T'$  invariant.

- Therefore, we construct the operator  $T|_{U^\perp}: U^\perp \rightarrow U^\perp$ , and

$$TT' = T'T \implies (T|_{U^\perp})(T'|_{U^\perp}) = (T'|_{U^\perp})(T|_{U^\perp}),$$

i.e.,  $(T|_{U^\perp})$  is normal on  $U^\perp$ . Moreover,  $\dim(U^\perp) = n - 1$ .

- Applying the same trick as in Theorem (11.1), we imply there exists an orthonor-

mal basis  $\{\mathbf{e}_2, \dots, \mathbf{e}_n\}$  of eigenvectors of  $(T|_{U^\perp})$ . Then we can argue that

$$\mathcal{B} = \{\mathbf{v}' = \mathbf{v}/\|\mathbf{v}\|, \mathbf{e}_2, \dots, \mathbf{e}_{k+1}\}$$

is a basis of orthonormal eigenvectors of  $V$ . ■

**Corollary 12.1** [Spectral Theorem for Normal Operator] Let  $T : V \rightarrow V$  be a normal operator on a  $\mathbb{C}$ -inner product space with  $\dim(V) < \infty$ . Then there exists self-adjoint operators  $P_1, \dots, P_k$  such that

$$P_i^2 = P_i, \quad P_i P_j = 0, i \neq j, \quad \sum_{i=1}^k P_i = I,$$

and  $T = \sum_{i=1}^k \lambda_i P_i$ , where  $\lambda_i$ 's are the eigenvalues of  $T$ .

R These  $P_i$ 's are the **orthogonal projections** from  $V$  to the  $\lambda_i$ -eigenspace  $\ker(T - \lambda_i I)$  of  $T$ , i.e., we have

$$v = P_i(v) + (v - P_i(v)),$$

where  $P_i(v) \in \ker(T - \lambda_i I)$ , and  $v - P_i(v) \in (\ker(T - \lambda_i I))^\perp$ .

You should know how to compute  $P_i$ 's when  $T(\mathbf{v}) = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{v}$  in the course MAT2040.

*Proof.* Since  $T$  has a basis of eigenvectors, by definition,  $T$  is diagonalizable. By proposition (8.2),

$$m_T(x) = (x - \lambda_1) \cdots (x - \lambda_k),$$

where  $\lambda_i$ 's are distinct. By spectral decomposition corollary (9.2), it suffices to show  $P_i$ 's are self-disjoint.

- Recall that  $P_i = a_i(T)q_i(T) := b_m T^m + \cdots + b_1 T + b_0 I$ , i.e., a polynomial of  $T$ , and therefore

$$P_i' = \bar{b}_m (T')^m + \cdots + \bar{b}_1 (T') + \bar{b}_0 I.$$

We claim that  $P_i$  is normal: Since  $T'T = TT'$ , we imply

$$(T')^p T^q = T^q (T')^p, \forall p, q \in \mathbb{N}$$

which follows that

$$\begin{aligned} P_i P'_i &= (b_m T^m + \cdots + b_0 I)(\bar{b}_m (T')^m + \cdots + \bar{b}_1 (T') + \bar{b}_0 I) \\ &= \sum_{1 \leq x, y \leq m} b_x \bar{b}_y (T)^x (T')^y \\ &= \sum_{1 \leq x, y \leq m} \bar{b}_y b_x (T')^y (T)^x \\ &= (\bar{b}_m (T')^m + \cdots + \bar{b}_1 (T') + \bar{b}_0 I)(b_m T^m + \cdots + b_0 I) \\ &= P'_i P_i \end{aligned}$$

- In general,  $S$  is self-adjoint, which implies  $S$  is normal, but not vice versa. However, the converse holds if further all eigenvalues of  $S$  are real numbers:

By Theorem (12.1), we imply  $S$  is orthonormally diagonalizable, and its diagonal representation is of the form

$$(S)_{\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{B}} = \text{diag}(\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_k).$$

Note that  $\mathcal{B}$  is also a basis for  $S'$  and elements of  $\mathcal{B}$  are eigenvalues of  $S'$ , by part (3) in proposition (12.1). Therefore,

$$(S')_{\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{B}} = \text{diag}(\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_k).$$

Therefore,  $S = S'$ .

In particular, for  $S = P_i$ , we can easily show all eigenvalues of  $P_i$  are 0 or 1, which are real. Therefore,  $P_i$ 's are self-adjoint. ■



**Corollary 12.2** Let  $T : V \rightarrow V$  be a linear operator on  $\mathbb{C}$ -inner product space with  $\dim(V) < \infty$ . Then  $T$  is normal if and only if  $T' = f(T)$  for some polynomial  $f(x) \in \mathbb{C}[x]$ .

*Proof.* • For the reverse direction, if  $T' = f(T)$ , then  $T'T = f(T)T = Tf(T) = TT'$ .  
 • For the forward direction, suppose that  $T$  is normal, then by corollary (12.1),

$$T = \sum_{i=1}^k \lambda_i P_i, \quad P_i = f_i(T), \quad \text{where } P_i \text{'s are self-adjoint,}$$

which follows that

$$T' = \left( \sum_{i=1}^k \lambda_i P_i \right)' = \sum_{i=1}^k \bar{\lambda}_i P_i' = \sum_{i=1}^k \bar{\lambda}_i P_i = \sum_{i=1}^k \bar{\lambda}_i f_i(T)$$

■

**R** The normal operator is a generalization of Hermitian matrices, and it inherits many nice properties of Hermitian.

## 12.1.2. Tensor Product

**Motivation.** Let  $U, V, W$  be vector spaces. We want to study bilinear maps  $f : U \times W \rightarrow U$ , i.e.,

$$f(av_1 + bv_2, w) = af(v_1, w) + bf(v_2, w)$$

$$f(v, cw_1 + dw_2) = cf(v, w_1) + df(v, w_2)$$

Unfortunately, bilinear form usually is not a linear transformation!

■ **Example 12.1** • Let  $f : \mathbb{R}^n \times \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be with  $(u, v) \mapsto \langle u, v \rangle$ .

• Let  $f : M_{n \times n}(\mathbb{F}) \times M_{n \times n}(\mathbb{F}) \rightarrow M_{n \times n}(\mathbb{F})$  be with  $f(A, B) = AB$ .

• Let  $f : \mathbb{F}[x] \times \mathbb{F}[x] \rightarrow \mathbb{F}$  be with  $f(p(x), q(x)) = p(1)q(2)$

- Let  $f : \mathbb{F}[x] \times \mathbb{F}[x] \rightarrow \mathbb{F}[x]$  be with  $f(p(x), q(x)) = p(x)q(x)$ .

■

## 12.4. Wednesday for MAT3040

**Reviewing.** Bilinear map:  $f : V \times W \rightarrow U$ , e.g.,

$$f : \mathbb{R}^3 \times \mathbb{R}^3$$

$$\text{with } f(u, v) = u \times v$$

Note that  $f$  is usually not a linear transformation, e.g.,

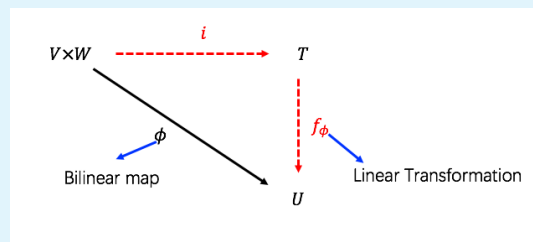
$$f(3\mathbf{v}, 3\mathbf{w}) = f(3\mathbf{v}, 3\mathbf{w}) = (3\mathbf{v}) \times (3\mathbf{w}) = 9\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{w} \neq 3f(\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}).$$

The vector space structure of  $V \times W$  is not suited to study bilinear map, and the proper way is to study its induced linear transformation.

**Definition 12.4** [Universal Property of Tensor Product] Let  $V, W$  be vector spaces. Consider the set

$$\text{Obj} := \{\phi : V \times W \rightarrow U \mid \phi \text{ is a bilinear map}\}$$

We say  $T$ , or  $(i : V \times W \rightarrow T) \in \text{Obj}$  satisfies the **universal property** if for any  $(\phi : V \times W \rightarrow U) \in \text{Obj}$ , there exists a unique linear transformation  $f_\phi : T \rightarrow U$  such that the diagram below commutes:



$$\text{i.e., } \phi = f_\phi \circ i.$$

Therefore, rather than studying bilinear map  $\phi$ , it is better to study the linear transformation  $f_\phi$  instead.

Question: does  $T$  exist?

**Definition 12.5** [Spanning Set] Let  $V, W$  be vector spaces. Let  $S = \{(\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}) \mid \mathbf{v} \in V, \mathbf{w} \in W\}$ , then we define

$$\mathfrak{X} = \text{span}(S).$$

(R)

1. The spanning set  $\mathfrak{X}$  is not additive, e.g.,  $\mathfrak{x}_1 = 3(0, \mathbf{w}) \in \mathfrak{X}$  and  $\mathfrak{x}_2 = 1(0, \mathbf{w}) + 1(0, 2\mathbf{w}) \in \mathfrak{X}$ , but  $\mathfrak{x}_1 \neq \mathfrak{x}_2$ .
2. Note that we assume no relations on the elements  $(\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}) \in S$ . More precisely, the set  $S = \{(\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}) \mid \mathbf{v} \in V, \mathbf{w} \in W\}$  is linearly independent in  $\mathfrak{X}$ . For example,  $(0, \mathbf{w}) \perp (0, 2\mathbf{w})$ .
3. The only legitimate relationship is

$$2(\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{w}_1) + 3(\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{w}_1) = 5(\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}),$$

which is not equal to  $(5\mathbf{v}, 5\mathbf{w})$

4.  $S$  is a basis of  $\mathfrak{X}$ , and therefore  $\mathfrak{X}$  is of uncountable dimension.

**Definition 12.6** [Special subspace of  $\mathfrak{X}$ ] Let  $\mathfrak{y} \leq \mathfrak{X}$  be a vector subspace spanned by vectors of the form

$$\{1(\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{w}) - 1(\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{w}) - 1(\mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{w})\}, \quad \text{and} \quad \{1(\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}_1 + \mathbf{w}_2) - 1(\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}_1) - 1(\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}_2)\}$$

and

$$\{1(k\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}) - k(\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}) \mid k \in \mathbb{F}\}$$

and

$$\{1(\mathbf{v}, k\mathbf{w}) - k(\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}) \mid k \in \mathbb{F}\}$$

**Definition 12.7** [Tensor Product] We define the **tensor product**  $V \otimes W$  by

$$V \otimes W = \mathcal{X}/y.$$

Therefore,  $\mathbf{v} \otimes \mathbf{w} = (\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}) + y \in \mathcal{X}/y$  ■

(R)

1. As a result, the tensor product is finitely additive:

$$\begin{aligned} (\mathbf{v}_1 + \mathbf{v}_2) \otimes \mathbf{w} &= (\mathbf{v}_1 + \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{w}) + y \\ &= (\mathbf{v}_1 + \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{w}) - [(\mathbf{v}_1 + \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{w}) - (\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{w}) - (\mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{w})] + y \\ &= 0(\mathbf{v}_1 + \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{w}) + (\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{w}) + (\mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{w}) + y \\ &= [(\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{w}) + y] + [(\mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{w}) + y] \\ &= \mathbf{v}_1 \otimes \mathbf{w} + \mathbf{v}_2 \otimes \mathbf{w} \end{aligned}$$

Similarly,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{v} \otimes (\mathbf{w}_1 + \mathbf{w}_2) &= (\mathbf{v} \otimes \mathbf{w}_1) + (\mathbf{v} \otimes \mathbf{w}_2) \\ (k\mathbf{v}) \otimes \mathbf{w} &= k(\mathbf{v} \otimes \mathbf{w}) \\ \mathbf{v} \otimes (k\mathbf{w}) &= k(\mathbf{v} \otimes \mathbf{w}) \end{aligned}$$

2. The product space  $V \times W$  is different from the tensor product space  $V \otimes W$ :

(a)  $(\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{0}) \neq \mathbf{0}_{V \times W}$  in  $V \times W$ ; but  $\mathbf{v} \otimes \mathbf{0} \in \mathbf{0}_{V \otimes W}$ :

$$\begin{aligned} V \otimes \mathbf{0} &= V \otimes (\mathbf{0}\mathbf{w}) \\ &= \mathbf{0}(V \otimes \mathbf{w}) \\ &= \mathbf{0}_{V \otimes W} \end{aligned}$$

Moreover,  $f$  is bilinear implies  $f(\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{0}) = \mathbf{0}$ .

(b)  $(\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{w}_1) + (\mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{w}_2) = (\mathbf{v}_1 + \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{w}_1 + \mathbf{w}_2)$ ; but  $\mathbf{v}_1 \otimes \mathbf{w}_1 + \mathbf{v}_2 \otimes \mathbf{w}_2$  cannot be simplified further, unless  $\mathbf{v}_1 = \mathbf{v}_2$ :

$$\mathbf{v} \otimes \mathbf{w}_1 + \mathbf{v} \otimes \mathbf{w}_2 = \mathbf{v} \otimes (\mathbf{w}_1 + \mathbf{w}_2)$$

**Theorem 12.3** The bilinear map

$$i: V \times W \rightarrow V \otimes W \quad (i \in \text{Obj})$$

$$\text{with } (\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}) \mapsto \mathbf{v} \otimes \mathbf{w}$$

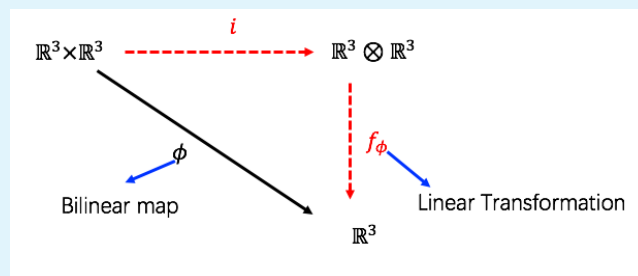
satisfies the universal property of tensor products.

■ **Example 12.5** Consider a common bilinear map

$$\phi: \mathbb{R}^3 \times \mathbb{R}^3 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^3$$

$$\text{with } (\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}) \mapsto \mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{w}$$

By the universal property, there exists the linear transformation  $f_\phi: \mathbb{R}^3 \otimes \mathbb{R}^3 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^3$  such that the diagram below commutes:





# Chapter 13

## Week13

### 13.1. Monday for MAT3040

Reviewing.

1. Define  $S = \{(\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}) \mid \mathbf{v} \in V, \mathbf{w} \in W\}$  and  $\mathfrak{X} = \text{span}(S)$ . In  $\mathfrak{X}$ , there are no relations between distinct elements of  $S$ , e.g.,

$$2(\mathbf{v}, 0) + 3(0, \mathbf{w}) \neq 1(2\mathbf{v}, 3\mathbf{w})$$

General element in  $\mathfrak{X}$ :

$$a_1(\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{w}_1) + \cdots + a_n(\mathbf{v}_n, \mathbf{w}_n),$$

where  $(\mathbf{v}_i, \mathbf{w}_i)$  are distinct.

2. Define the space  $V \otimes W = \mathfrak{X}/y$ , with

$$\mathbf{v} \otimes \mathbf{w} = 1(\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}) + y \in V \otimes W.$$

General element in  $\mathfrak{X}/y := V \otimes W$ :

$$\begin{aligned} a_1(\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{w}_1) + \cdots + a_n(\mathbf{v}_n, \mathbf{w}_n) + y &= a_1((\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{w}_1) + y) + \cdots + a_n((\mathbf{v}_n, \mathbf{w}_n) + y) \\ &= a_1(\mathbf{v}_1 \otimes \mathbf{w}_1) + \cdots + a_n(\mathbf{v}_n \otimes \mathbf{w}_n) \\ &= (a_1 \mathbf{v}_1) \otimes \mathbf{w}_1 + \cdots + (a_n \mathbf{v}_n) \otimes \mathbf{w}_n \end{aligned}$$



Therefore, a general element in  $V \otimes W$  is of the form

$$\mathbf{v}'_1 \otimes \mathbf{w}_1 + \cdots + \mathbf{v}'_n \otimes \mathbf{w}_n, \quad \mathbf{v}'_i \in V, \mathbf{w}_i \in W. \quad (13.1)$$

Note that  $V \otimes W$  is different from  $V \times W$ , where all elements in  $V \times W$  can be expressed as  $(\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w})$ .

### 3. The tensor product mapping

$$\begin{aligned} i : \quad V \times W &\rightarrow V \otimes W \\ \text{with } (\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}) &\mapsto \mathbf{v} \otimes \mathbf{w} \end{aligned}$$

satisfies the universal property.

Here we present an example for computing tensor product by making use of the rules below:

$$(\mathbf{v}_1 + \mathbf{v}_2) \otimes \mathbf{w} = \mathbf{v}_1 \otimes \mathbf{w} + \mathbf{v}_2 \otimes \mathbf{w}$$

$$\mathbf{v} \otimes (\mathbf{w}_1 + \mathbf{w}_2) = (\mathbf{v} \otimes \mathbf{w}_1) + (\mathbf{v} \otimes \mathbf{w}_2)$$

$$(k\mathbf{v}) \otimes \mathbf{w} = k(\mathbf{v} \otimes \mathbf{w})$$

$$\mathbf{v} \otimes (k\mathbf{w}) = k(\mathbf{v} \otimes \mathbf{w})$$

■ **Example 13.1** Let  $V = W = \mathbb{R}^2$ , with

$$\mathbf{e}_1 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{e}_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Here we have

$$\begin{aligned}
 \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \otimes \begin{pmatrix} -4 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} &= (3\mathbf{e}_1 + 2\mathbf{e}_2) \otimes (-4\mathbf{e}_1 + 2\mathbf{e}_2) \\
 &= (3\mathbf{e}_1) \otimes (-4\mathbf{e}_1 + 2\mathbf{e}_2) + (\mathbf{e}_2) \otimes (-4\mathbf{e}_1 + 2\mathbf{e}_2) \\
 &= (3\mathbf{e}_1) \otimes (-4\mathbf{e}_1) + (3\mathbf{e}_1) \otimes (2\mathbf{e}_2) + (\mathbf{e}_2) \otimes (-4\mathbf{e}_1) + \mathbf{e}_2 \otimes (2\mathbf{e}_2) \\
 &= -12(\mathbf{e}_1 \otimes \mathbf{e}_1) + 6(\mathbf{e}_1 \otimes \mathbf{e}_2) - 4(\mathbf{e}_2 \otimes \mathbf{e}_1) + 2(\mathbf{e}_2 \otimes \mathbf{e}_2)
 \end{aligned}$$

Exercise: Check that  $\mathbf{e}_1 \otimes \mathbf{e}_2 + \mathbf{e}_2 \otimes \mathbf{e}_1$  cannot be re-written as

$$(a\mathbf{e}_1 + b\mathbf{e}_2) \otimes (c\mathbf{e}_1 + d\mathbf{e}_2), \quad a, b, c, d \in \mathbb{R}.$$

### 13.1.1. Basis of $V \otimes W$

**Motivation.** Given that  $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_n\}$  is a basis of  $V$ , and  $\{\mathbf{w}_1, \dots, \mathbf{w}_m\}$  a basis of  $W$ , we aim to find a basis of  $V \otimes W$  using  $\mathbf{v}_i$ 's and  $\mathbf{w}_j$ 's.

**Proposition 13.1** The set  $\{\mathbf{v}_i \otimes \mathbf{w}_j \mid 1 \leq i \leq n, 1 \leq j \leq m\}$  spans the tensor product space  $V \otimes W$ .

*Proof.* Consider any  $\mathbf{v} \in V$  and  $\mathbf{w} \in W$ , and we want to express  $\mathbf{v} \otimes \mathbf{w}$  in terms of  $\mathbf{v}_i, \mathbf{w}_j$ . Suppose that  $\mathbf{v} = \alpha_1 \mathbf{v}_1 + \dots + \alpha_n \mathbf{v}_n$  and  $\mathbf{w} = \beta_1 \mathbf{w}_1 + \dots + \beta_m \mathbf{w}_m$ .

Substituting  $\mathbf{v} = \alpha_1 \mathbf{v}_1 + \dots + \alpha_n \mathbf{v}_n$  into the expression  $\mathbf{v} \otimes \mathbf{w}$ , we imply

$$\begin{aligned}
 \mathbf{v} \otimes \mathbf{w} &= (\alpha_1 \mathbf{v}_1 + \dots + \alpha_n \mathbf{v}_n) \otimes \mathbf{w} \\
 &= (\alpha_1 \mathbf{v}_1) \otimes \mathbf{w} + \dots + (\alpha_n \mathbf{v}_n) \otimes \mathbf{w} \\
 &= \alpha_1(\mathbf{v}_1 \otimes \mathbf{w}) + \dots + \alpha_n(\mathbf{v}_n \otimes \mathbf{w})
 \end{aligned}$$

For each  $\mathbf{v}_i \otimes \mathbf{w}$ ,  $i = 1, \dots, n$ , similarly,

$$\mathbf{v}_i \otimes \mathbf{w} = \beta_1(\mathbf{v}_i \otimes \mathbf{w}_1) + \dots + \beta_m(\mathbf{v}_i \otimes \mathbf{w}_m).$$

Therefore,

$$\mathbf{v} \otimes \mathbf{w} = \sum_{i=1}^n \sum_{j=1}^m \alpha_i \beta_j (\mathbf{v}_i \otimes \mathbf{w}_j) \quad (13.2)$$

By (13.1), any vector in  $V \otimes W$  is of the form

$$\mathbf{v}^{(1)} \otimes \mathbf{w}^{(1)} + \cdots + \mathbf{v}^{(\ell)} \otimes \mathbf{w}^{(\ell)}$$

By (13.2), each  $\mathbf{v}^{(k)} \otimes \mathbf{w}^{(k)}, k = 1, \dots, \ell$ , can be expressed as

$$\mathbf{v}^{(k)} \otimes \mathbf{w}^{(k)} = \sum_{i=1}^n \sum_{j=1}^m \alpha_i^{(k)} \beta_j^{(k)} (\mathbf{v}_i \otimes \mathbf{w}_j)$$

Therefore,

$$\mathbf{v}^{(1)} \otimes \mathbf{w}^{(1)} + \cdots + \mathbf{v}^{(\ell)} \otimes \mathbf{w}^{(\ell)} = \sum_{k=1}^{\ell} \sum_{i=1}^n \sum_{j=1}^m \alpha_i^{(k)} \beta_j^{(k)} (\mathbf{v}_i \otimes \mathbf{w}_j)$$

In other words,  $\{\mathbf{v}_i \otimes \mathbf{w}_j \mid 1 \leq i \leq n, 1 \leq j \leq m\}$  spans  $V \otimes W$ . ■

**Theorem 13.1** A basis of  $V \otimes W$  is  $\{\mathbf{v}_i \otimes \mathbf{w}_j \mid 1 \leq i \leq n, 1 \leq j \leq m\}$

*Proof.* By proposition (13.1), it suffices to show that the set  $\{\mathbf{v}_i \otimes \mathbf{w}_j \mid 1 \leq i \leq n, 1 \leq j \leq m\}$  is linear independent. Suppose that

$$\sum_{i=1}^n \sum_{j=1}^m \alpha_{ij} (\mathbf{v}_i \otimes \mathbf{w}_j) = \mathbf{0} \quad (13.3)$$

Suppose that  $\{\phi_1, \dots, \phi_n\}$  is a dual basis of  $V^*$ , and  $\{\psi_1, \dots, \psi_m\}$  is a dual basis of  $W^*$ .

Construct the mapping

$$\pi_{p,q} : V \times W \rightarrow \mathbb{F}$$

$$\text{with } \pi_{p,q} = \phi_p(\mathbf{v})\psi_q(\mathbf{w})$$

- The mapping  $\pi_{p,q}$  is actually bilinear: for instance,

$$\begin{aligned}
 \pi_{p,q}(a\mathbf{v}_1 + b\mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{w}) &= \phi_p(a\mathbf{v}_1 + b\mathbf{v}_2)\psi_q(\mathbf{w}) \\
 &= (a\phi_p(\mathbf{v}_1) + b\phi_p(\mathbf{v}_2))\psi_q(\mathbf{w}) \\
 &= a\phi_p(\mathbf{v}_1)\psi_q(\mathbf{w}) + b\phi_p(\mathbf{v}_2)\psi_q(\mathbf{w}) \\
 &= a\pi_{p,q}(\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{w}) + b\pi_{p,q}(\mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{w}).
 \end{aligned}$$

Following the similar ideas, we can check that  $\pi_{p,q}(\mathbf{v}, a\mathbf{w}_1 + b\mathbf{w}_2) = a\pi_{p,q}(\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}_1) + b\pi_{p,q}(\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}_2)$ .

- Therefore,  $\pi_{p,q} \in \text{Obj}$ . By the universal property of the tensor product,  $\pi_{p,q}$  induces the unique linear transformation

$$\begin{aligned}
 \Pi_{p,q} : V \otimes W &\rightarrow \mathbb{F} \\
 \text{with } \Pi_{p,q}(\mathbf{v} \otimes \mathbf{w}) &= \pi_{p,q}(\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w})
 \end{aligned}$$

In other words,  $\Pi_{p,q}(\mathbf{v} \otimes \mathbf{w}) = \phi_p(\mathbf{v})\psi_q(\mathbf{w})$ .

- Applying the mapping  $\Pi_{p,q}$  on both sides of (13.3), we imply

$$\Pi_{p,q} \left( \sum_{i=1}^n \sum_{j=1}^n \alpha_{ij} (\mathbf{v}_i \otimes \mathbf{w}_j) \right) = \Pi_{p,q}(\mathbf{0})$$

Or equivalently,

$$\sum_{i=1}^n \sum_{j=1}^n \alpha_{ij} \Pi_{p,q}(\mathbf{v}_i \otimes \mathbf{w}_j) = 0,$$

i.e.,

$$\sum_{i=1}^n \sum_{j=1}^n \alpha_{ij} \phi_p(\mathbf{v}_i) \psi_q(\mathbf{w}_j) = \alpha_{p,q} = 0$$

Following this procedure, we can argue that  $\alpha_{ij} = 0, \forall i, \forall j$ .

■

**Corollary 13.1** If  $\dim(V), \dim(W) < \infty$ , then  $\dim(V \otimes W) = \dim(V) \dim(W)$

*Proof.* Check dimension of the basis of  $V \otimes W$ .

■

**R** The universal property can be very helpful. In particular, given a bilinear mapping, say  $\phi : V \times W \rightarrow U$ , we imply  $\phi \in \text{Obj}$ . By theorem (12.3), since  $i$  satisfies the universal property of tensor product, we can induce an unique linear transformation  $\psi : V \otimes W \rightarrow U$ .

Let's try another example for making use of the universal property:

**Theorem 13.2** For finite dimension  $U$  and  $V$ ,

$$V \otimes U \cong U \otimes V$$

*Proof.* Construct the mapping

$$\begin{aligned} \phi : \quad V \times U &\rightarrow U \otimes V \\ \text{with } \phi(\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{u}) &= \mathbf{u} \otimes \mathbf{v} \end{aligned}$$

Indeed,  $\phi$  is bilinear: for instance,

$$\begin{aligned} \phi(a\mathbf{v}_1 + b\mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{u}) &= \mathbf{u} \otimes (a\mathbf{v}_1 + b\mathbf{v}_2) \\ &= a(\mathbf{u} \otimes \mathbf{v}_1) + b(\mathbf{u} \otimes \mathbf{v}_2) \\ &= a\phi(\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{u}) + b\phi(\mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{u}) \end{aligned}$$

Therefore,  $\phi \in \text{Obj}$ . By the universal property of tensor product, we induce an unique linear transformation

$$\begin{aligned} \Phi : \quad V \otimes U &\rightarrow U \otimes V \\ \text{with } \Phi(\mathbf{v} \otimes \mathbf{u}) &= \mathbf{u} \otimes \mathbf{v} \end{aligned}$$

Similarly, we may induce the linear transformation

$$\begin{aligned} \Psi : \quad U \otimes V &\rightarrow V \otimes U \\ \text{with } \Psi(\mathbf{u} \otimes \mathbf{v}) &= \mathbf{v} \otimes \mathbf{u} \end{aligned}$$

Given any  $\sum_i \mathbf{u}_i \otimes \mathbf{v}_i \in U \otimes V$ , observe that

$$\begin{aligned}
 (\Phi \circ \Psi) \left( \sum_i \mathbf{u}_i \otimes \mathbf{v}_i \right) &= \Phi \left( \sum_i \Psi(\mathbf{u}_i \otimes \mathbf{v}_i) \right) \\
 &= \Phi \left( \sum_i \mathbf{v}_i \otimes \mathbf{u}_i \right) \\
 &= \sum_i \Phi(\mathbf{v}_i \otimes \mathbf{u}_i) \\
 &= \sum_i \mathbf{u}_i \otimes \mathbf{v}_i
 \end{aligned}$$

Therefore,  $\Phi \circ \Psi = \text{id}_{U \otimes V}$ . Similarly,  $\Psi \circ \Phi = \text{id}_{V \otimes U}$ . Therefore,

$$U \otimes V \cong V \otimes U.$$

■

### 13.1.2. Tensor Product of Linear Transformation

**Motivation.** Given two linear transformations  $T : V \rightarrow V'$  and  $S : W \rightarrow W'$ , we want to construct the tensor product

$$T \otimes S : V \otimes W \rightarrow V' \otimes W'$$

Question: is  $T \otimes S$  a linear transformation?

Answer: Yes. Universal property plays a role!

## 13.4. Wednesday for MAT3040

### 13.4.1. Tensor Product for Linear Transformations

**Proposition 13.5** Suppose that  $T : V \rightarrow V'$  and  $S : W \rightarrow W'$  are linear transformations, then there exists a unique linear transformation

$$T \otimes S : V \otimes W \rightarrow V' \otimes W'$$
$$\text{satisfying } (T \otimes S)(v \otimes w) = T(v) \otimes S(w)$$

*Proof.* We construct the mapping

$$T \times S : V \times W \rightarrow V' \otimes W'$$
$$\text{with } (T \times S)(v, w) = T(v) \otimes S(w)$$

This mapping is indeed bilinear: for instance, we can show that

$$(T \times S)(av_1 + bv_2, w) = a(T \times S)(v_1, w) + b(T \times S)(v_2, w)$$

Therefore,  $T \times S \in \text{Obj.}$  Since the tensor product satisfies the universal property, we imply there exists a unique linear transformation

$$T \otimes S : V \otimes W \rightarrow V' \otimes W'$$
$$\text{satisfying } (T \otimes S)(v \otimes w) = T(v) \otimes S(w)$$

■

**Notation Warning.** Does the notion  $T \otimes S$  really form a tensor product, i.e., do we obtain the additive rules for tensor product such as

$$(aT_1 + bT_2) \otimes S = a(T_1 \otimes S) + b(T_2 \otimes S)?$$

■ **Example 13.2** Let  $V = V' = \mathbb{F}^2$  and  $W = W' = \mathbb{F}^3$ . Define the matrix-multiply mappings:

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} T: V \rightarrow V \\ \text{with } \mathbf{v} \mapsto \mathbf{A}\mathbf{v} \\ \mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \end{array} \right\} \quad \left\{ \begin{array}{l} S: W \rightarrow W \\ \text{with } \mathbf{w} \mapsto \mathbf{B}\mathbf{w} \\ \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} p & q & r \\ s & t & u \\ v & w & x \end{pmatrix} \end{array} \right\}$$

How does  $T \otimes S : V \otimes W \rightarrow V \otimes W$  look like?

- Suppose  $\{e_1, e_2\}, \{f_1, f_2, f_3\}$  are usual basis of  $V, W$ , respectively. Then the basis of  $V \otimes W$  is given by:

$$C = \{e_1 \otimes f_1, e_1 \otimes f_2, e_1 \otimes f_3, e_2 \otimes f_1, e_2 \otimes f_2, e_2 \otimes f_3\}.$$

- As a result, we can compute  $(T \otimes S)(e_i \otimes f_j)$  for  $i = 1, 2$  and  $j = 1, 2, 3$ . For instance,

$$\begin{aligned} (T \otimes S)(e_1 \otimes e_1) &= T(e_1) \otimes S(e_1) \\ &= (ae_1 + ce_2) \otimes (pe_1 + se_2 + ve_3) \\ &= (ap)e_1 \otimes e_1 + (as)e_1 \otimes e_2 + (av)e_1 \otimes e_3 + (cp)e_2 \otimes e_1 + (cs)e_2 \otimes e_2 + (cv)e_2 \otimes e_3 \end{aligned}$$

- Therefore, we obtain a matrix representation for the linear transformation  $(T \otimes S)$ :

We want a matrix representation for  $(T \otimes S)$ :

$$(T \otimes S)_{C,C} = \begin{pmatrix} aB & bB \\ cB & dB \end{pmatrix},$$

which is a large matrix formed by taking all possible products between the elements of  $\mathbf{A}$  and those of  $\mathbf{B}$ . This operation is called the **Kronecker Tensor Product**, see the command *kron* in MATLAB for detail.

■



**Proposition 13.6** More generally, given the linear operator  $T : V \rightarrow V$  and  $S : W \rightarrow W$ , let  $\mathcal{A} = \{v_1, \dots, v_n\}, \mathcal{B} = \{w_1, \dots, w_m\}$  be a basis of  $V, W$  respectively, with

$$(T)_{\mathcal{A},\mathcal{A}} = (a_{ij}) \quad (S)_{\mathcal{B},\mathcal{B}} = (b_{ij}) := B$$

As a result,  $(T \otimes S)_{C,C} = A \otimes B$ , where  $C = \{v_1 \otimes w_1, \dots, v_n \otimes w_m\}$ , and  $A \otimes B$  denotes the Kronecker tensor product, defined as the matrix

$$\begin{pmatrix} a_{1,1}B & \cdots & a_{1,n}B \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ a_{n,1}B & \cdots & a_{n,n}B \end{pmatrix}.$$

*Proof.* Following the similar procedure as in Example (13.2) and applying the relation

$$\begin{aligned} (T \otimes S)(v_i \otimes w_j) &= T(v_i) \otimes S(w_j) \\ &= \left( \sum_{k=1}^n a_{ki} v_k \right) \otimes \left( \sum_{\ell=1}^m b_{\ell j} w_\ell \right) \\ &= \sum_{k=1}^n \sum_{\ell=1}^m (a_{ki} b_{\ell j}) v_k \otimes w_\ell \end{aligned}$$

■

**Proposition 13.7** The operation  $T \otimes S$  satisfies all the properties of tensor product. For example,

$$(aT_1 + bT_2) \otimes S = a(T_1 \otimes S) + b(T_2 \otimes S)$$

$$T \otimes (cS_1 + dS_2) = c(T \otimes S_1) + d(T \otimes S_2)$$

Therefore, the usage of the notion “ $\otimes$ ” is justified for the definition of  $T \otimes S$ .

*Proof using matrix multiplication.* For instance, consider the operation  $(T + T') \otimes S$ , with  $(T)_{\mathcal{A},\mathcal{A}} = (a_{ij}), (T')_{\mathcal{A},\mathcal{A}} = (c_{ij}), (S)_{\mathcal{B},\mathcal{B}} = B$ .

We compute its matrix representation directly:

$$\begin{aligned}
((T + T') \otimes S)_{C,C} &= (T + T')_{\mathcal{A},\mathcal{A}} \otimes (S)_{\mathcal{B},\mathcal{B}} \\
&= [(T)_{\mathcal{A},\mathcal{A}} + (T')_{\mathcal{A},\mathcal{A}}] \otimes (S)_{\mathcal{B},\mathcal{B}} \\
&= (T)_{\mathcal{A},\mathcal{A}} \otimes (S)_{\mathcal{B},\mathcal{B}} + (T')_{\mathcal{A},\mathcal{A}} \otimes (S)_{\mathcal{B},\mathcal{B}}
\end{aligned}$$

where the last equality is by the additive rule for kronecker product for matrices.

Therefore,

$$((T + T') \otimes S)_{C,C} = (T \otimes S)_{C,C} + (T' \otimes S)_{C,C} \implies (T + T') \otimes S = T \otimes S + T' \otimes S$$

■

*Proof using basis of  $T \otimes S$ .* Another way of the proof is by computing

$$((T + T') \otimes S)(v_i \otimes w_j),$$

where  $\{v_i \otimes w_j \mid 1 \leq i \leq n, 1 \leq j \leq m\}$  forms a basis of  $(T + T') \otimes S$ :

$$\begin{aligned}
((T + T') \otimes S)(v_i \otimes w_j) &= (T + T')(v_i) \otimes S(w_j) \\
&= (T(v_i) + T'(v_i)) \otimes S(w_j) \\
&= T(v_i) \otimes S(w_j) + T'(v_i) \otimes S(w_j) \\
&= (T \otimes S)(v_i \otimes w_j) + (T' \otimes S)(v_i \otimes w_j)
\end{aligned}$$

Since  $((T + T') \otimes S)(v_i \otimes w_j)$  coincides with  $(T \otimes S + T' \otimes S)(v_i \otimes w_j)$  for all basis vectors  $v_i \otimes w_j \in C$ , we imply

$$(T + T') \otimes S = T \otimes S + T' \otimes S$$

■

**Proposition 13.8** Let  $A, C$  be linear operators from  $V$  to  $V$ , and  $B, D$  be linear operators from  $W$  to  $W$ , then

$$(A \otimes B) \circ (C \otimes D) = (AC) \otimes (BD)$$

**Proposition 13.9** Define linear operators  $A : V \rightarrow V$  and  $B : W \rightarrow W$  with  $\dim(V), \dim(W) < \infty$ . Then

$$\det(A \otimes B) = (\det(A))^{\dim(W)} (\det(B))^{\dim(V)}$$

**Corollary 13.3** There exists a linear transformation

$$\Phi : \text{Hom}(V, V) \otimes \text{Hom}(W, W) \rightarrow \text{Hom}(V \otimes W, V \otimes W)$$

$$\text{with } A \otimes B \mapsto A \otimes B$$

where the input of  $\Phi$  is the tensor product of linear transformations, and the output is the linear transformation.

*Proof.* Construct the mapping

$$\Phi : \text{Hom}(V, V) \times \text{Hom}(W, W) \rightarrow \text{Hom}(V \otimes W, V \otimes W)$$

$$\text{with } \Phi(A, B) = A \otimes B$$

The  $\Phi$  is indeed bilinear: for instance,

$$\begin{aligned} \Phi(pA + qC, B) &= (pA + qC) \otimes B \\ &= p(A \otimes B) + q(C \otimes B) \\ &= p\Phi(A, B) + q\Phi(C, B) \end{aligned}$$

This corollary follows from the universal property of tensor product. ■

**R** If assuming that  $\dim(V), \dim(W) < \infty$ , we imply

$$\begin{aligned} \dim(\text{Input space of } \Phi) &= \dim(\text{Hom}(V, V)) \dim(\text{Hom}(W, W)) \\ &= [\dim(V) \dim(V)] \cdot [\dim(W) \dim(W)] = [\dim(V) \dim(W)]^2 \\ &= [\dim(V \otimes W)]^2 \\ &= \dim(\text{Hom}(V \otimes W, V \otimes W)) \\ &= \dim(\text{Output space of } \Phi) \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, is  $\Phi$  an isomorphism? If so, then every linear operator  $\alpha : V \otimes W \rightarrow V \otimes W$  can be expressed as

$$\alpha = A_1 \otimes B_1 + \cdots + A_k \otimes B_k$$

where  $A_i : V \rightarrow V$  and  $B_j : W \rightarrow W$ .



# Chapter 14

## Week14

### 14.1. Monday for MAT3040

#### 14.1.1. Multilinear Tensor Product

**Definition 14.1** [Tensor Product among More spaces] Let  $V_1, \dots, V_p$  be vector spaces over  $\mathbb{F}$ . Let  $S = \{(v_1, \dots, v_p) \mid v_i \in V_i\}$  (We assume no relations among distinct elements in  $S$ ), and define  $\mathfrak{X} = \text{span}(S)$ .

1. Then define the tensor product space  $V_1 \otimes \dots \otimes V_p = \mathfrak{X}/y$ , where  $y$  is the vector subspace of  $\mathfrak{X}$  spanned by vectors of the form

$$(v_1, \dots, v_i + v'_i, \dots, v_p) - (v_1, \dots, v_i, \dots, v_p) - (v_1, \dots, v'_i, \dots, v_p),$$

and

$$(v_1, \dots, \alpha v_i, \dots, v_p) - \alpha(v_1, \dots, v_i, \dots, v_p)$$

where  $i = 1, 2, \dots, p$ .

2. The tensor product for vectors is defined as

$$v_1 \otimes \dots \otimes v_p := \{(v_1, \dots, v_p) + y\} \in V_1 \otimes \dots \otimes V_p$$

1. We have

$$v_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes (\alpha v_i + \beta v'_i) \otimes \cdots \otimes v_p = \alpha(v_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes v_i \otimes \cdots \otimes v_p) + \beta(v_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes v'_i \otimes \cdots \otimes v_p)$$

2. A general vector in  $V_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes V_p$  is

$$\sum_{i=1}^n (W_1^{(i)} \otimes \cdots \otimes W_p^{(i)}), \quad \text{where } W_j^{(i)} \in V_j, j = 1, \dots, p$$

3. Let  $\mathcal{B}_i = \{v_i^{(1)}, \dots, v_i^{(\dim(V_i))}\}$  be a basis of  $V_i, i = 1, \dots, p$ , then

$$\mathcal{B} = \{V_1^{(\alpha_1)} \otimes \cdots \otimes V_p^{(\alpha_p)} \mid 1 \leq \alpha_i \leq \dim(V_i)\}$$

is a basis of  $V_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes V_p$ . As a result,

$$\dim(V_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes V_p) = (\dim(V_1)) \times \cdots \times (\dim(V_p))$$

**Theorem 14.1 — Universal Property of multi-linear tensor.** Let  $\text{Obj} = \{\phi : V_1 \times \cdots \times V_p \rightarrow W \mid \phi \text{ is a } p\text{-linear map}\}$ , i.e.,

$$\begin{aligned} \phi(v_1, \dots, \alpha v_i + \beta v'_i, \dots, v_p) &= \alpha \phi(v_1, \dots, v_i, \dots, v_p) + \beta \phi(v_1, \dots, v'_i, \dots, v_p), \\ \forall v_i, v'_i \in V_i, i &= 1, \dots, p, \forall \alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{F}. \end{aligned}$$

For instance, the multiplication of  $p$  matrices is a  $p$ -linear map.

Then the mapping in the  $\text{Obj}$ ,

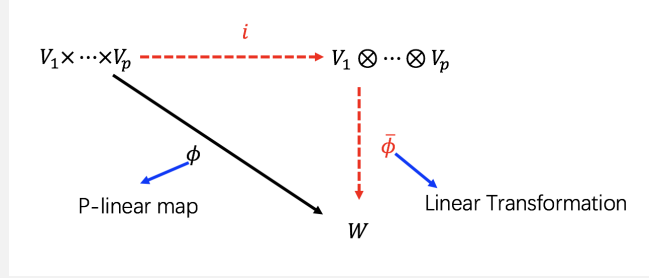
$$\begin{aligned} i : \quad V_1 \times V_p &\rightarrow V_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes V_p \\ \text{with } (v_1, \dots, v_p) &\mapsto v_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes v_p \end{aligned}$$

satisfies the universal property. In other words, for any  $\phi : V_1 \times \cdots \times V_p \in \text{Obj}$ , there

exists the unique linear transformation

$$\bar{\phi} : V_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes V_p \rightarrow W$$

such that the diagram below commutes:



In other words,  $\phi = \bar{\phi} \circ i$ .

**Corollary 14.1** Let  $T_i : V_i \rightarrow V'_i$  be a linear transformation,  $1 \leq i \leq p$ . There is a unique linear transformation

$$(T_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes T_p) : V_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes V_p \rightarrow V'_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes V'_p$$

$$\text{satisfying} \quad (T_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes T_p)(v_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes v_p) = T_1(v_1) \otimes \cdots \otimes T_p(v_p)$$

*Proof.* Construct the mapping

$$\phi : V_1 \times \cdots \times V_p \rightarrow V'_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes V'_p$$

$$\text{with } (v_1, \dots, v_p) \mapsto T_1(v_1) \otimes \cdots \otimes T_p(v_p)$$

which is indeed  $p$ -linear.

By the universal property, we induce the unique linear transformation

$$\bar{\phi} : V_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes V_p \rightarrow V'_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes V'_p$$

■



**Notation.** To make life easier, from now on, we only consider  $V_1 = \cdots = V_p = V$ . Then for any linear transformation  $T : V \rightarrow W$ , we have

$$T^{\otimes p} : V \otimes \cdots \otimes V \rightarrow W \otimes \cdots \otimes W$$

We use the short-hand notation  $V^{\otimes p}$  to denote  $\underbrace{V \otimes \cdots \otimes V}_{p \text{ terms in total}}$

**Final Exam Ends Here.**

## 14.1.2. Exterior Power

**Definition 14.2** A  $p$ -linear map  $\phi : V \times \cdots \times V \rightarrow W$  is called **alternating** if

$$\phi(v_1, \dots, v_i, \dots, v_j, \dots, v_p) = \mathbf{0}_W, \quad \text{provided that there exists some } v_i = v_j \text{ for } i \neq j.$$

Also, we say  $\phi$  is  $p$ -alternating ■

■ **Example 14.1** 1. The cross product mapping

$$\begin{aligned} \phi : \quad \mathbb{R}^3 \times \mathbb{R}^3 &\rightarrow \mathbb{R}^3 \\ \text{with } (\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}) &\mapsto \mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{w} \end{aligned}$$

is alternating:

- $\phi$  is bilinear
- $\phi(\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v}) = \mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{0}$ .

2. The determinant mapping

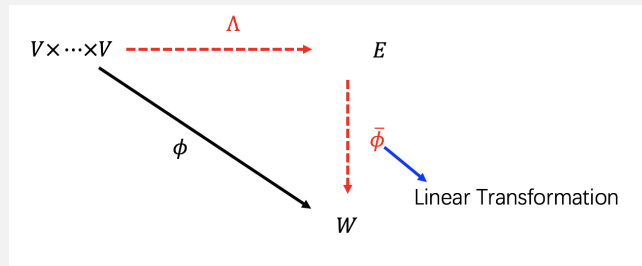
$$\begin{aligned} \phi : \quad \underbrace{\mathbb{F}^n \times \cdots \times \mathbb{F}^n}_{n \text{ terms in total}} &\rightarrow \mathbb{F} \\ \text{with } (\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_n) &\mapsto \det([\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \dots, \mathbf{v}_n]) \end{aligned}$$

is alternating:

- $\phi$  is  $n$ -linear by MAT2040 knowledge
- $\phi$  is alternating by MAT2040 knowledge

**Theorem 14.2 — Universal Property for exterior power.** Let  $\text{Obj} := \{\phi : \underbrace{V \times \cdots \times V}_{p \text{ terms}} \rightarrow W \mid \phi \text{ is } p\text{-alternating map}\}$ . Then there exists  $\{\Lambda : V \times \cdots \times V \rightarrow E\} \in \text{Obj}$  satisfying the following:

- For all  $\phi : V \times \cdots \times V \rightarrow W \in \text{Obj}$ , there exists unique linear transformation  $\bar{\phi} : E \rightarrow W$  satisfying



In other words,  $\phi = \bar{\phi} \circ \Lambda$ .

